



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

the 1990s, the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections has increased in the United Kingdom [10].

There is a paucity of data on the epidemiology of *S. flexneri* in the United Kingdom. The only published study of *S. flexneri* in the United Kingdom was by Smith *et al.* [11], who reported the isolation of 10 strains of *S. flexneri* from patients with acute colitis in 1981. The strains were isolated from patients with acute colitis, and the authors concluded that *S. flexneri* was the causative agent of the disease. The authors also reported that the strains were sensitive to ampicillin, tetracycline, and chloramphenicol, but resistant to penicillin and streptomycin.

More recently, a study of *S. flexneri* in the United Kingdom was conducted by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) [12]. The study was a retrospective analysis of 10 years of data (1980–1990) from the CDC's National Nosocomial Infection Survey (NNIS). The study found that the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections in the United Kingdom was 1.5 cases per 1000 patient-days in 1980, and increased to 2.5 cases per 1000 patient-days in 1990.

The study also found that the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections in the United Kingdom was significantly higher in patients who were treated with antibiotics than in patients who were not treated with antibiotics. The authors concluded that the use of antibiotics may be a risk factor for the development of *S. flexneri* infections. The authors also reported that the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections in the United Kingdom was significantly higher in patients who were treated with ampicillin than in patients who were not treated with ampicillin.

The study also found that the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections in the United Kingdom was significantly higher in patients who were treated with tetracycline than in patients who were not treated with tetracycline. The authors concluded that the use of tetracycline may be a risk factor for the development of *S. flexneri* infections. The authors also reported that the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections in the United Kingdom was significantly higher in patients who were treated with chloramphenicol than in patients who were not treated with chloramphenicol.

The study also found that the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections in the United Kingdom was significantly higher in patients who were treated with penicillin than in patients who were not treated with penicillin. The authors concluded that the use of penicillin may be a risk factor for the development of *S. flexneri* infections. The authors also reported that the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections in the United Kingdom was significantly higher in patients who were treated with streptomycin than in patients who were not treated with streptomycin.

The study also found that the incidence of *S. flexneri* infections in the United Kingdom was significantly higher in patients who were treated with ampicillin and tetracycline than in patients who were not treated with ampicillin and tetracycline.



600049502Q

27976 1. 81

1 2 96

SE 6G 1.10

100





600049502Q

2.7976 1.81

1 2 96

SE. 6G. 1.10

100

—





Early English Text Society.

Reprints, 1864, No. 4.

---

Sir Gawayne

and

The Green Knight:

AN ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE-POEM,

(AB. 1360 A.D.)

BY THE AUTHOR OF

"EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS."

RE-EDITED FROM COTTON. MS. NERO, A. X., IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

BY

RICHARD MORRIS,

EDITOR OF HAMFOLK'S "PRICK OF CONSCIENCE," "EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS," ETC.,  
MEMBER OF THE COUNCIL OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY.

[Second Edition, revised, 1869.]

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,

BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

—  
MDCCLXIV.

—  
*Price Ten Shillings.*

27976

2.

81



# Early English Text Society.

## Committee of Management:

ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, Esq.	RICHARD MORRIS, Esq.
DANBY P. FRY, Esq.	H. T. PARKER, Esq.
FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, Esq.	EDWARD B. PEACOCK, Esq.
H. HUCKS GIBBS, Esq.	REV. GEORGE G. PERRY.
FITZEDWARD HALL, Esq.	REV. WALTER W. SKEAT.
REV. J. RAWSON LUMBY.	HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq.

THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

## Honorary Secretary:

HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq., 53, BERNERS STREET, LONDON, W.

## Bankers:

THE UNION BANK OF LONDON, REGENT STREET BRANCH,  
14, ARGYLL PLACE, W.

The Publications for the first three years, 1864, 1865, and 1866, are out of print, but a separate subscription has been opened for their immediate reprint. The Texts for 1864 are ready, and nearly all for 1865 are now at press. Subscribers who desire all or any of these years should send their names at once to the Hon. Secretary, as several hundred additional names are required before the Texts for 1866 can be sent to press.

### *The Publications for 1864 are:—*

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. R. Morris. 16s.
2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 4s.
3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall. 4s.
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. R. Morris. 10s.

### *The Publications for 1865 are:—*

5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruite of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley.
6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.
7. Genesis and Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. R. Morris.
8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, Rev. G. G. Perry.
9. Thynne on Chaucer's Works, ab. 1508, ed. Dr Kingsley.
10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley.
11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. F. Hall.
12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. F.

### *The Publications for 1866 are:—*

13. Sainte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne.
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefour, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby.
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall.
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall.
17. Parallel Extracts from 29 MSS. of Piers Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.
18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne.
19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. F. Hall.
20. Hampole's English Prose Treatises, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley.
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.
23. Dan Michel's Aycnbite of Inwyt, 1340, ed. R. Morris.

### *The Publications for 1867 are:—*

24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s.
25. The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Cleene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s.
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS. (ab. 1440), ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2s.
27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s.
28. Langland's Vision of Piers Plowman, 1362 A.D. Part I. The earliest or Vernon Text; Text A. ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s.
29. Early English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.) from unique MSS. in the Lambeth and other Libraries. Part I. Edited by R. Morris. 7s.
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s.

### *The Publications for 1868 (one guinea) are:—*

31. Myrc's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s.
32. The Babees Book, Urbanitatis, the Bokes of Nourture of John Russell and Hugh Rhodes, the Bokes of Keruyng, Curtasye, and Demeanour, &c., with some French and Latin Poems on like subjects, ed. from Harleian and other MSS. by F. J. Furnivall. 15s.
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry (from French of A.D. 1372), ab. 1440 A.D. A Father's Book for his Daughters, ed. from Harl. MS. 1764 and Caxton's version, by Thomas Wright. 8s.
34. Early English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.) from unique MSS. in the Lambeth and other Libraries. Part II., ed. R. Morris, Esq. 8s.
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s.

A few copies are left of No. 5, Hume's Orthographie, 4s.; No. 17, Extracts from Piers Plowman, 1s.; No. 20, Hampole's Treatises, 2s.; No. 22, Partenay, 6s.; 23, Aycnbite, 10s. 6d.

The Society's Report, January, 1869, with Lists of Texts to be published in future years, etc., etc., can be had on application to the Hon. Secretary, HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq., 53, Berners Street, W.

Sir Gawayne

and

The Green Knight.



# Sir Gawayne

and

# The Green Knight:

AN ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE-POEM,

(AB. 1360 A.D.)

BY THE AUTHOR OF

“EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS.”

RE-EDITED FROM COTTON. MS. NERO, A. X., IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

BY

RICHARD MORRIS,

EDITOR OF HAMPOLE'S "PRICKER OF CONSCIENCE," "EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS," ETC.;  
MEMBER OF THE COUNCIL OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY.

*Second Edition, revised, 1869.*

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXIV.



## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

IN re-editing the present romance-poem I have been saved all labour of transcription by using the very accurate text contained in Sir F. Madden's "Syr Gawayne."

I have not only read his copy with the manuscript, but also the proof-sheets as they came to hand, hoping by this means to give the reader a text free from any errors of transcription.

The present edition differs from that of the earlier one in having the contractions of the manuscript expanded and side-notes added to the text to enable the reader to follow with some degree of ease the author's pleasant narrative of Sir Gawayne's adventures.

The Glossary is taken from Sir F. Madden's "Syr Gawayne,"<sup>1</sup> to which, for the better interpretation of the text, I have made several additions, and have, moreover, glossed nearly all the words previously left unexplained.

For a description of the Manuscript, and particulars relating to the authorship and dialect of the present work, the reader is referred to the preface to *Early English Alliterative Poems*.

R. M.

LONDON,  
December 22, 1864.

<sup>1</sup> Sir F. Madden has most generously placed at the disposal of the Early English Text Society any of his works which it may determine to re-edit.

the same time, the *Journal of the American Medical Association* (JAMA) published a letter to the editor from a physician in the same hospital, who stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

The physician also stated that the patient had been treated for a long time and that the physician was not sure of the diagnosis.

## INTRODUCTION.

---

No Knight of the Round Table has been so highly honoured by the old Romance-writers as Sir Gawayne, the son of Loth, and nephew to the renowned Arthur. They delighted to describe him as Gawayne the good, a man matchless on mould, the most gracious that under God lived, the hardest of hand, the most fortunate in arms, and the most polite in hall, whose knowledge, knighthood, kindly works, doings, doughtiness, and deeds of arms were known in all lands.

When Arthur beheld the dead body of his kinsman lying on the ground bathed in blood, he is said to have exclaimed, "O righteous God, this blood were worthy to be preserved and enshrined in gold!" Our author, too, loves to speak of his hero in similar terms of praise, calling him the knight faultless in his five wits, void of every offence, and adorned with every earthly virtue. He represents him as one whose trust was in the five wounds, and in whom the five virtues which distinguished the true knight were more firmly established than in any other on earth.

The author of the present story, who, as we know from his religious poems, had an utter horror of moral impurity, could have chosen no better subject for a romance in which amusement and moral instruction were to be combined. In the following tale he shows how the true knight, though tempted sorely not once alone, but twice, nay thrice, breaks not his vow of chastity, but turns aside the tempter's shafts with the shield of purity and arm of faith, and so passes scatheless through the perilous defile of trial and opportunity seeming safe.



But while our author has borrowed many of the details of his story from the "Roman de Perceval" by Chrestien de Troyes, he has made the narrative more attractive by the introduction of several original and highly interesting passages which throw light on the manners and amusements of our ancestors.

The following elaborate descriptions are well deserving of especial notice :—

- I. The mode of completely arming a knight (p. 18).
- II. The hunting and breaking the deer (pp. 36—42).
- III. The hunting and unlacing the wild boar (pp. 45—50).
- IV. A fox hunt (pp. 54—61).

The following is an outline of the story of Gawayne's adventures, more or less in the words of the writer himself :—

Arthur, the greatest of Britain's kings, holds the Christmas festival at Camelot, surrounded by the celebrated knights of the Round Table, noble lords, the most renowned under heaven, and ladies the loveliest that ever had life (p. 2). This noble company celebrate the New Year by a religious service, by the bestowal of gifts, and the most joyous mirth. Lords and ladies take their seats at the table—Queen Guenever, the grey-eyed, gaily dressed, sits at the dais, the high table, or table of state, where too sat Gawayne and Ywain together with other worthies of the Round Table (p. 3). Arthur, in mood as joyful as a child, his blood young and his brain wild, declares that he will not eat nor sit long at the table until some adventurous thing, some uncouth tale, some great marvel, or some encounter of arms has occurred to mark the return of the New Year (p. 4).

The first course was announced with cracking of trumpets, with the noise of nakers and noble pipes.

"Each two had dishes twelve,  
Good beer and bright wine both."

Scarcely was the first course served when another noise than that of music was heard. There rushes in at the hall-door a knight of gigantic stature—the greatest on earth—in measure high. He was clothed entirely in green, and rode upon a green foal (p. 5). Fair wavy hair fell about the shoulders of the Green Knight, and a great beard like a bush hung upon his breast (p. 6).

The knight carried no helmet, shield, or spear, but in one hand a holly bough, and in the other an axe "huge and unmeet," the edge of which was as keen as a sharp razor (p. 7). Thus arrayed, the Green Knight enters the hall without saluting any one. The first word that he uttered was, "Where is the governour of this gang? gladly

would I see him and with himself speak reason." To the knights he cast his eye, looking for the most renowned. Much did the noble assembly marvel to see a man and a horse of such a hue, green as the grass. Even greener they seemed than green enamel on bright gold. Many marvels had they seen, but none such as this. They were afraid to answer, but sat stone-still in a dead silence, as if overpowered by sleep ;

"Not all from fear, but some for courtesy" (p. 8).

Then Arthur before the high daïs salutes the Green Knight, bids him welcome, and entreats him to stay awhile at his Court. The knight says that his errand is not to abide in any dwelling, but to seek the most valiant of the heroes of the Round Table that he may put his courage to the proof, and thus satisfy himself as to the fame of Arthur's court. "I come," he says, "in peace, as ye may see by this branch that I bear here. Had I come with hostile intentions, I should not have left my hauberk, helmet, shield, sharp spear, and other weapons behind me. But because I desire no war, 'my weeds are softer.' If thou be so bold as all men say, thou wilt grant me the request I am about to make." "Sir courteous knight," replies Arthur, "if thou cravest battle only, here failest thou not to fight." "Nay," says the Green Knight, "I seek no fighting. Here about on this bench are only beardless children. Were I arrayed in arms on a high steed no man here would be a match for me (p. 9). But it is now Christmas time, and this is the New Year, and I see around me many brave ones ;—if any be so bold in his blood that dare strike a stroke for another, I shall give him this rich axe to do with it whatever he pleases. I shall abide the first blow just as I sit, and will stand him a stroke, stiff on this floor, provided that I deal him another in return.

And yet give I him respite,  
A twelvemonth and a day ;  
Now haste and let see tite (soon)  
Dare any here-in ought say.'"

If he astounded them at first, much more so did he after this speech, and fear held them all silent. The knight, righting himself in his saddle, rolls fiercely his red eyes about, bends his bristly green brows, and strokes his beard awaiting a reply. But finding none that would carp with him, he exclaims, "What! is this Arthur's house, the fame of which has spread through so many realms? Forsooth, the renown of the Round Table is overturned by the word of one man's speech, for all tremble for dread without a blow being struck!" (p. 10). With this he laughed so loud that Arthur blushed for very shame, and waxed as wroth as the wind. "I know no man," he says, "that is aghast at thy great words. Give me now thy axe and I will grant thee thy request!" Arthur seizes the axe, grasps the handle, and sternly brandishes it about, while the Green Knight, with a stern cheer and a dry countenance, stroking his beard and drawing down

his coat, awaits the blow (p. 11). Sir Gawayne, the nephew of the king, beseeches his uncle to let him undertake the encounter; and, at the earnest entreaty of his nobles, Arthur consents "to give Gawayne the game" (p. 12).

Sir Gawayne then takes possession of the axe, but, before the blow is dealt, the Green Knight asks the name of his opponent. "In good faith," answers the good knight, "Gawayne I am called, that bids thee to this buffet, whatever may befall after, and at this time twelvemonth will take from thee another, with whatever weapon thou wilt, and with no wight else alive." "By Gog," quoth the Green Knight, "it pleases me well that I shall receive at thy fist that which I have sought here—moreover thou hast truly rehearsed the terms of the covenant,—but thou shalt first pledge me thy word that thou wilt seek me thyself, wheresoever on earth thou believest I may be found, and fetch thee such wages as thou dealest me to-day before this company of doughty ones." "Where should I seek thee?" replies Gawayne, "where is thy place? I know not thee, thy court, or thy name. I wot not where thou dwellest, but teach me thereto, tell me how thou art called, and I shall endeavour to find thee,—and that I swear thee for truth and by my sure troth." "That is enough in New Year," says the groom in green, "if I tell thee when I have received the tap. When thou hast smitten me, then smartly I will teach thee of my house, my home, and my own name, so that thou mayest follow my track and fulfil the covenant between us. If I spend no speech, then speedest thou the better, for then mayest thou remain in thy own land and seek no further; but cease thy talking" (p. 13). Take now thy grim tool to thee and let us see how thou knockest." "Gladly, sir, for sooth," quoth Gawayne, and his axe he brandishes.

The Green Knight adjusts himself on the ground, bends slightly his head, lays his long lovely locks over his crown, and lays bare his neck for the blow. Gawayne then gripped the axe, and, raising it on high, let it fall quickly upon the knight's neck and severed the head from the body. The fair head fell from the neck to the earth, and many turned it aside with their feet as it rolled forth. The blood burst from the body, yet the knight never faltered nor fell; but boldly he started forth on stiff shanks and fiercely rushed forward, seized his head, and lifted it up quickly. Then he runs to his horse, the bridle he catches, steps into his stirrups and strides aloft. His head by the hair he holds in his hands, and sits as firmly in his saddle as if no mishap had ailed him, though headless he was (p. 14). He turned his ugly trunk about—that ugly body that bled,—and holding the head in his hand, he directed the face toward the "dearest on the dais." The head lifted up its eyelids and looked abroad, and thus much spoke with its mouth as ye may now hear:

"Loke, Gawayne, thou be prompt to go as thou hast promised, and seek till thou find me according to thy promise made in the hear-

<sup>1</sup> This, I think, is the true explanation of *slokes*.

ing of these knights. Get thee to the Green Chapel, I charge thee, to fetch such a dint as thou hast dealt, to be returned on New Year's morn. As the Knight of the Green Chapel I am known to many, wherefore if thou seekest thou canst not fail to find me. Therefore come, or recreant be called." With a fierce start the reins he turns, rushes out of the hall-door, his head in his hand, so that the fire of the flint flew from the hoofs of his foal. To what kingdom he belonged knew none there, nor knew they from whence he had come. What then?

"The king and Gawayne there  
At that green (one) they laugh and grin."

Though Arthur wondered much at the marvel, he let no one see that he was at all troubled about it, but full loudly thus spake to his comely queen with courteous speech :

"Dear dame, to-day be never dismayed, well happens such craft at Christmas time. I may now proceed to meat, for I cannot deny that I have witnessed a wondrous adventure this day " (p. 15).

He looked upon Sir Gawayne and said, "Now, sir, hang up thine axe, for enough has it hewn." So the weapon was hung up on high that all might look upon it, and "by true title thereof tell the wonder." Then all the knights hastened to their seats at the table, so did the king and our good knight, and they were there served with all dainties, "with all manner of meat and minstrelsy."

Though words were wanting when they first to seat went, now are their hands full of stern work, and the marvel affords them good subject for conversation. But a year passes full quickly and never returns,—the beginning is seldom like the end ; wherefore this Christmas passed away and the year after, and each season in turn followed after another (p. 16). Thus winter winds round again, and then Gawayne thinks of his wearisome journey (p. 17). On All-hallows day Arthur entertains right nobly the lords and ladies of his court in honour of his nephew, for whom all courteous knights and lovely ladies were in great grief. Nevertheless they spoke only of mirth, and, though joyless themselves, made many a joke to cheer the good Sir Gawayne (p. 18). Early on the morrow Sir Gawayne, with great ceremony, is arrayed in his armour (p. 19), and thus completely equipped for his adventure he first hears mass, and afterwards takes leave of Arthur, the knights of the Round Table, and the lords and ladies of the court, who kiss him and commend him to Christ. He bids them all good day, as he thought, for evermore (p. 21) ;

*"Very much was the warm water that poured from eyes that day."*

Now rides our knight through the realms of England with no companion but his foal, and no one to hold converse with save God alone. From Camelot, in Somersetshire, he proceeds through Gloucestershire and the adjoining counties into Montgomeryshire, and thence through North Wales to Holyhead, adjoining the Isle of

Anglesea (p. 22), from which he passes into the very narrow peninsula of Wirral, in Cheshire, where dwelt but few that loved God or man. Gawayne enquires after the Green Knight of the Green Chapel, but all the inhabitants declare that they have never seen "any man of such hues of green."

The knight thence pursues his journey by strange paths, over hill and moor, encountering on his way not only serpents, wolves, bulls, bears, and boars, but wood satyrs and giants. But worse than all these, however, was the sharp winter, "when the cold clear water shed from the clouds, and froze ere it might fall to the earth. Nearly slain with the sleet he slept in his armour, more nights than enough, in naked rocks" (p. 23).

Thus in peril and plight the knight travels on until Christmas-eve, and to Mary he makes his moan that she may direct him to some abode. On the morn he arrives at an immense forest, wondrously wild, surrounded by high hills on every side, where he found hoary oaks full huge, a hundred together. The hazel and the hawthorn intermingled were all overgrown with moss, and upon their boughs sat many sad birds that piteously piped for pain of the cold. Gawayne besought the Lord and Mary to guide him to some habitation where he might hear mass (p. 24). Scarcely had he crossed himself thrice, when he perceived a dwelling in the wood set upon a hill. It was the loveliest castle he had ever beheld. It was pitched on a prairie, with a park all about it, enclosing many a tree for more than two miles. It shone as the sun through the bright oaks (p. 25).

Gawayne urges on his steed Gringolet, and finds himself at the "chief gate." He called aloud, and soon there appeared a "porter" on the wall, who demanded his errand.

"Good sir," quoth Gawayne, "wouldst thou go to the high lord of this house, and crave a lodging for me?"

"Yea, by Peter!" replied the porter, "well I know that thou art welcome to dwell here as long as thou likest."

The drawbridge is soon let down, and the gates opened wide to receive the knight. Many noble ones hasten to bid him welcome (p. 26). They take away his helmet, sword, and shield, and many a proud one presses forward to do him honour. They bring him into the hall, where a fire was brightly burning upon the hearth. Then the lord of the land<sup>1</sup> comes from his chamber and welcomes Sir Gawayne, telling him that he is to consider the place as his own. Our knight is next conducted to a bright bower, where was noble bedding—curtains of pure silk, with golden hems, and Tarsie tapestries upon the walls and the floors (p. 27). Here the knight doffed his armour and put on rich robes, which so well became him, that all declared that a more comely knight Christ had never made (p. 28).

<sup>1</sup> Gawayne is now in the castle of the Green Knight, who, divested of his elvish or supernatural character, appears to our knight merely as a bold one with a beaver-hued beard.

A table is soon raised, and Gawayne, having washed, proceeds to meat. Many dishes are set before him—"sews" of various kinds, fish of all kinds, some baked in bread, others broiled on the embers, some boiled, and others seasoned with spices. The knight expresses himself well pleased, and calls it a most noble and princely feast.

After dinner, in reply to numerous questions, he tells his host that he is Gawayne, one of the Knights of the Round Table. When this was made known great was the joy in the hall. Each one said softly to his companion, "Now we shall see courteous behaviour and learn the terms of noble discourse, since we have amongst us 'that fine father of nurture.' Truly God has highly favoured us in sending us such a noble guest as Sir Gawayne" (p. 29). At the end of the Christmas festival Gawayne desires to take his departure from the castle, but his host persuades him to stay, promising to direct him to the Green Chapel (about two miles from the castle), that he may be there by the appointed time (p. 34).

A covenant is made between them, the terms of which were that the lord of the castle should go out early to the chase, that Gawayne meanwhile should lie in his loft at his ease, then rise at his usual hour, and afterwards sit at table with his hostess, and that at the end of the day they should make an exchange of whatever they might obtain in the interim. "Whatever I win in the wood," says the lord, "shall be yours, and what thou gettest shall be mine" (p. 35).

Full early before daybreak the folk uprise, saddle their horses, and truss their mails. The noble lord of the land, arrayed for riding, eats hastily a sop, and having heard mass, proceeds with a hundred hunters to hunt the wild deer (p. 36).

All this time Gawayne lies in his gay bed. His nap is disturbed by a little noise at the door, which is softly opened. He heaves up his head out of the clothes, and, peeping through the curtains, beholds a most lovely lady (the wife of his host). She came towards the bed, and the knight laid himself down quickly, pretending to be asleep. The lady stole to the bed, cast up the curtains, crept within, sat her softly on the bed-side, and waited some time till the knight should awake. After lurking awhile under the clothes considering what it all meant, Gawayne unlocked his eyelids, and put on a look of surprise, at the same time making the sign of the cross, as if afraid of some hidden danger (p. 38). "Good morrow, sir," said that fair lady, "ye are a careless sleeper to let one enter thus. I shall bind you in your bed, of that be ye sure." "Good morrow," quoth Gawayne, "I shall act according to your will with great pleasure, but permit me to rise that I may the more comfortably converse with you." "Nay, beau sir," said that sweet one, "ye shall not rise from your bed, for since I have caught my knight I shall hold talk with him. I ween well that ye are Sir Gawayne that all the world worships, whose honour and courtesy are so greatly praised. Now ye

are here, and we are alone (my lord and his men being afar off, other men, too, are in bed, so are my maidens), and the door is safely closed, I shall use my time well while it lasts. Ye are welcome to my person to do with it as ye please, and I will be your servant" (p. 39).

Gawayne behaves most discreetly, for the remembrance of his forthcoming adventure at the Green Chapel prevents him from thinking of love (p. 41). At last the lady takes leave of the knight by catching him in her arms and kissing him (p. 41). The day passes away merrily, and at dusk the lord of the castle returns from the chase. He presents the venison to Gawayne according to the previous covenant between them. Our knight gives his host a kiss as the only piece of good fortune that had fallen to him during the day. "It is good," says the other, "and would be much better if ye would tell me where ye won such bliss" (p. 44). "That was not in our covenant," replies Gawayne, "so try me no more." After much laughing on both sides they proceed to supper, and afterwards, while the choice wine is being carried round, Gawayne and his host renew their agreement. Late at night they take leave of each other and hasten to their beds. "By the time that the cock had crowed and cackled thrice" the lord was up, and after "meat and mass" were over the hunters make for the woods, where they give chase to a wild boar who had grown old and mischievous (p. 45).

While the sportsmen are hunting this "wild swine" our lovely knight lies in his bed. He is not forgotten by the lady, who pays him an early visit, seeking to make further trial of his virtues. She sits softly by his side and tells him that he has forgotten what she taught him the day before (p. 47). "I taught you of kissing," says she; "that becomes every courteous knight." Gawayne says that he must not take that which is forbidden him. The lady replies that he is strong enough to enforce his own wishes. Our knight answers that every gift not given with a good will is worthless. His fair visitor then enquires how it is that he who is so skilled in the true sport of love and so renowned a knight, has never talked to her of love (p. 48). "You ought," she says, "to show and teach a young thing like me some tokens of true-love's crafts; I come hither and sit here alone to learn of you some game; do teach me of your wit while my lord is from home." Gawayne replies that he cannot undertake the task of expounding true-love and tales of arms to one who has far more wisdom than he possesses. Thus did our knight avoid all appearance of evil, though sorely pressed to do what was wrong (p. 49). The lady, having bestowed two kisses upon Sir Gawayne, takes her leave of him (p. 50).

At the end of the day the lord of the castle returns home with the shields and head of the wild boar. He shows them to his guest, who declares that "such a brawn of a beast, nor such sides of a swine," he never before has seen. Gawayne takes possession of the

spoil according to covenant, and in return he bestows two kisses upon his host, who declares that his guest has indeed been rich with "such chaffer" (p. 52).

After much persuasion, Gawayne consents to stop at the castle another day (p. 53). Early on the morrow the lord and his men hasten to the woods, and come upon the track of a fox, the hunting of which affords them plenty of employment and sport (p. 54). Meanwhile our good knight sleeps soundly within his comely curtains. He is again visited by the lady of the castle. So gaily was she attired, and so "faultless of her features," that great joy warmed the heart of Sir Gawayne. With soft and pleasant smiles "they smite into mirth," and are soon engaged in conversation. Had not Mary thought of her knight, he would have been in great peril (p. 56). So sorely does the fair one press him with her love, that he fears lest he should become a traitor to his host. The lady enquires whether he has a mistress to whom he has plighted his troth. The knight swears by St John that he neither has nor desires one. This answer causes the dame to sigh for sorrow, and telling him that she must depart, she asks for some gift, if it were only a glove, by which she might "think on the knight and lessen her grief" (p. 57). Gawayne assures her that he has nothing worthy of her acceptance; that he is on an "uncouth errand," and therefore has "no men with no mails containing precious things," for which he is truly sorry.

Quoth that lovesome (one)—

"Though I had nought of yours,  
Yet should ye have of mine.

Thus saying, she offers him a rich ring of red gold "with a shining stone standing aloft," that shone like the beams of the bright sun. The knight refused the gift, as he had nothing to give in return. "Since ye refuse my ring," says the lady, "because it seems too rich, and ye would not be beholden to me, I shall give you my girdle that is less valuable" (p. 58). But Gawayne replies that he will not accept gold or reward of any kind, though "ever in hot and in cold" he will be her true servant.

"Do ye refuse it," asks the lady, "because it seems simple and of little value? Whoso knew the virtues that are knit therein would estimate it more highly. For he who is girded with this green lace cannot be wounded or slain by any man under heaven." The knight thinks awhile, and it strikes him that this would be a "jewel for the jeopardy" that he had to undergo at the Green Chapel. So he not only accepts the lace, but promises to keep the possession of it a secret (p. 59). By that time the lady had kissed him thrice, and she then takes "her leave and leaves him there."

Gawayne rises, dresses himself in noble array, and conceals the "love lace" where he might find it again. He then hies to mass, shrives him of his misdeeds, and obtains absolution. On his return to the hall he solaces the ladies with comely carols and all kinds of



joy (p. 60). The dark night came, and then the lord of the castle, having slain the fox, returns to his "dear home," where he finds a fire brightly burning and his guest amusing the ladies (p. 61). Gawayne, in fulfilment of his agreement, kisses his host thrice.<sup>1</sup> "By Christ," quoth the other knight, "ye have caught much bliss. I have hunted all this day and nought have I got but the skin of this foul fox (the devil have the goods!), and that is full poor for to pay for such precious things" (p. 62).

After the usual evening's entertainment, Gawayne retires to rest. The next morning, being New Year's day, is cold and stormy. Snow falls, and the dales are full of drift. Our knight in his bed locks his eyelids, but full little he sleeps. By each cock that crows he knows the hour, and before day-break he calls for his chamberlain, who quickly brings him his armour (p. 64). While Gawayne clothed himself in his rich weeds he forgot not the "lace, the lady's gift," but with it doubly girded his loins. He wore it not for its rich ornaments, "but to save himself when it behoved him to suffer," and as a safeguard against sword or knife (p. 65).

Having thanked his host and all the renowned assembly for the great kindness he had experienced at their hands, "he steps into stirrups and strides aloft" (p. 66).

The drawbridge is let down, and the broad gates unbarred and borne open upon both sides, and the knight, after commending the castle to Christ, passes thereout and goes on his way accompanied by his guide, that should teach him to turn to that place where he should receive the much-dreaded blow. They climb over cliffs, where each hill had a hat and a mist-cloak, until the next morn, when they find themselves on a full high hill covered with snow. The servant bids his master remain awhile, saying, "I have brought you hither at this time, and now ye are not far from that noted place that ye have so often enquired after. The place that ye press to is esteemed full perilous, and there dwells a man in that waste the worst upon earth, for he is stiff and stern and loves to strike, and greater is he than any man upon middle-earth, and his body is bigger than the best four in Arthur's house. He keeps the Green Chapel; there passes none by that place, however proud in arms, that he does not 'ding him to death with dint of his hand.' He is a man immoderate and 'no mercy uses,' for be it churl or chaplain that by the chapel rides, monk or mass-priest, or any man else, it is as pleasant to him to kill them as to go alive himself. Wherefore I tell thee truly, 'come ye there, ye be killed, though ye had twenty lives to spend. He has dwelt there long of yore, and on field much sorrow has wrought. Against his sore dints ye may not defend you' (p. 67). Therefore, good Sir Gawayne, let the man alone, and for God's sake go by some other path, and then I shall hie me home again. I swear to you by

<sup>1</sup> He only in part keeps to his covenant, as he holds back the *love-lace*.

God and all His saints that I will never say that ever ye attempted to flee from any man."

Gawayne thanks his guide for his well-meant kindness, but declares that to the Green Chapel he will go, though the owner thereof be "a stern knave," for God can devise means to save his servants.

"Mary!" quoth the other, "since it pleases thee to lose thy life I will not hinder thee. Have thy helmet on thy head, thy spear in thy hand, and ride down this path by yon rock-side, till thou be brought to the bottom of the valley. Then look a little on the plain, on thy left hand, and thou shalt see in that glade the chapel itself, and the burly knight that guards it (p. 68). Now, farewell Gawayne the noble! for all the gold upon ground I would not go with thee nor bear thee fellowship through this wood 'on foot farther.'" Thus having spoken, he gallops away and leaves the knight alone.

Gawayne now pursues his journey, rides through the dale, and looks about. He sees no signs of a resting-place, but only high and steep banks, and the very shadows of the high woods seemed wild and distorted. No chapel, however, could he discover. After a while he sees a round hill by the side of a stream; thither he goes, alights, and fastens his horse to the branch of a tree. He walks about the hill, debating with himself what it might be. It had a hole in the one end and on each side, and everywhere overgrown with grass, but whether it was only an old cave or a crevice of an old crag he could not tell (p. 69).

"Now, indeed," quoth Gawayne, "a desert is here; this oratory is ugly with herbs overgrown. It is a fitting place for the man in green to 'deal here his devotions after the devil's manner.' Now I feel it is the fiend (the devil) in my five wits that has covenanted with me that he may destroy me. This is a chapel of misfortune—evil betide it! It is the most cursed kirk that ever I came in." With his helmet on his head, and spear in his hand, he roams up to the rock, and then he hears from that high hill beyond the brook a wondrous wild noise. Lo! it clattered in the cliff as if one upon a grindstone were grinding a scythe. It whirled like the water at a mill, and rushed and re-echoed, terrible to hear. "Though my life I forgo," says Gawayne, "no noise shall cause me to fear."

Then he cried aloud, "Who dwells in this place, discourse with me to hold? For now is good Gawayne going right here if any brave wight will hie him hither, either now or never" (p. 70).

"Abide," quoth one on the bank above, over his head, "and thou shalt have all in haste that I promised thee once."

Soon there comes out of a hole in the crag, with a fell weapon, a Danish axe quite new, the "man in the green," clothed as at first as to his legs, locks, and beard. But now he is on foot and walks on the earth. When he reaches the stream, he hops over and boldly strides about. He meets Sir Gawayne, who tells him that he is quite ready to fulfil his part of the compact. "Gawayne," quoth that 'green

gome' (man), "may God preserve thee! Truly thou art welcome to my place, 'and thou hast timed thy travel' as a true man should. Thou knowest the covenants made between us, at this time twelve-month, that on New Year's day I should return thee thy blow. We are now in this valley by ourselves, and can do as we please (p. 71). Have, therefore, thy helmet off thy head, and 'have here thy pay.' Let us have no more talk than when thou didst strike off my head with a single blow."

"Nay, by God!" quoth Gawayne, "I shall not begrudge thee thy will for any harm that may happen, but will stand still while thou strikest."

Then he stoops a little and shows his bare neck, unmoved by any fear. The Green Knight takes up his "grim tool," and with all his force raises it aloft, as if he meant utterly to destroy him. As the axe came gliding down Gawayne "shrank a little with the shoulders from the sharp iron." The other withheld his weapon, and then reproved the prince with many proud words. "Thou art not Gawayne that is so good esteemed, that never feared for no host by hill nor by vale, for now thou fleest for fear before thou feelest harm (p. 72). Such cowardice of that knight did I never hear. I never flinched nor fled when thou didst aim at me in King Arthur's house. My head flew to my feet and yet I never fled, wherefore I deserve to be called the better man."

Quoth Gawayne, "I shunted once, but will do so no more, though my head fall on the stones. But hasten and bring me to the point; deal me my destiny, and do it out of hand, for I shall stand thee a stroke and start no more until thine axe has hit me—have here my troth." "Have at thee, then," said the other, and heaves the axe aloft, and looks as savagely as if he were mad. He aims at the other mightily, but withholds his hand ere it might hurt. Gawayne readily abides the blow without flinching with any member, and stood still as a stone or a tree fixed in rocky ground with a hundred roots.

Then merrily the other did speak, "Since now thou hast thy heart whole it behoves me to strike, so take care of thy neck." Gawayne answers with great wroth, "Thrash on, thou fierce man, thou threatenest too long; I believe thy own heart fails thee."

"Forsooth," quoth the other, "since thou speakest so boldly, I will no longer delay" (p. 73). Then, contracting "both lips and brow," he made ready to strike, and let fall his axe on the bare neck of Sir Gawayne. "Though he hammered" fiercely, he only "severed the hide," causing the blood to flow. When Gawayne saw his blood on the snow, he quickly seized his helmet and placed it on his head. Then he drew out his bright sword, and thus angrily spoke: "Cease, man, of thy blow, bid me no more. I have received a stroke in this place without opposition, but if thou givest me any more readily shall I requite thee, of that be thou sure. Our covenant stipulates one stroke, and therefore now cease."

The Green Knight, resting on his axe, looks on Sir Gawayne, as bold and fearless he there stood, and then with a loud voice thus addresses the knight : " Bold knight, be not so wroth, no man here has wronged thee (p. 74) ; I promised thee a stroke, and thou hast it, so hold thee well pleased. I could have dealt much worse with thee, and caused thee much sorrow. Two blows I aimed at thee, for twice thou kissedst my fair wife ; but I struck thee not, because thou restoredst them to me according to agreement. At the third time thou failedst, and therefore I have given thee that tap. That woven girdle, given thee by my own wife, belongs to me. I know well thy kisses, thy conduct also, and the wooing of my wife, for I wrought it myself. I sent her to try thee, and truly methinks thou art the most faultless man that ever on foot went. Still, sir, thou wert wanting in good faith ; but as it proceeded from no immorality, thou being only desirous of saving thy life, the less I blame thee."

Gawayne stood confounded, the blood rushed into his face, and he shrank within himself for very shame. " Cursed," he cried, " be cowardice and covetousness both ; in you are villany and vice, that virtue destroy." Then he takes off the girdle and throws it to the knight in green, cursing his cowardice and covetousness. The Green Knight, laughing, thus spoke : " Thou hast confessed so clean, and acknowledged thy faults, that I hold thee as pure as thou hadst never forfeited since thou wast first born. I give thee, sir, the gold-hemmed girdle as a token of thy adventure at the Green Chapel. Come now to my castle, and we shall enjoy together the festivities of the New Year" (p. 76).

" Nay, forsooth," quoth the knight, " but for your kindness may God requite you. Commend me to that courteous one your comely wife, who with her crafts has beguiled me. But it is no uncommon thing for a man to come to sorrow through women's wiles ; for so was Adam beguiled with one, and Solomon with many. Samson was destroyed by Delilah, and David suffered much through Bathsheba. '*It were indeed great bliss for a man to love them well and believe them not.*' Since the greatest upon earth were so beguiled, methinks I should be excused. But God reward you for your girdle, which I will ever wear in remembrance of my fault, and when pride shall exalt me, a look to this love-lace shall lessen it (p. 77). But since ye are the lord of yonder land, from whom I have received so much honour, tell me truly your right name, and I shall ask no more questions."

Quoth the other, " I am called Bernlak de Hautdesert, through might of Morgain la Fay, who dwells in my house. Much has she learnt of Merlin, who knows all your knights at home. She brought me to your hall for to essay the prowess of the Round Table. She wrought this wonder to bereave you of your wits, hoping to have grieved Guenever and affrighted her to death by means of the man that spoke with his head in his hand before the high table. She is

even thine aunt, Arthur's half sister ; wherefore come to thine aunt, for all my household love thee."

Gawayne refuses to accompany the Green Knight, and so, with many embraces and kind wishes, they separate—the one to his castle, the other to Arthur's court.

After passing through many wild ways, our knight recovers from the wound in his neck, and at last comes safe and sound to the court of King Arthur. Great then was the joy of all ; the king and queen kiss their brave knight, and make many enquiries about his journey. He tells them of his adventures, hiding nothing—"the chance of the chapel, the cheer of the knight, the love of the lady, and lastly of the lace." Groaning for grief and shame he shows them the cut in his neck, which he had received for his unfaithfulness (p. 79). The king and his courtiers comfort the knight—they laugh loudly at his adventures, and unanimously agree that those lords and ladies that belonged to the Round Table, and each knight of the brotherhood, should ever after wear a bright green belt for Gawayne's sake. And he upon whom it was conferred honoured it evermore after.

Thus in Arthur's time this adventure befell, whereof the "*Brutus Books*" bear witness (p. 80).

I need not say that the *Brutus Books* we possess do not contain the legend here set forth, though it is not much more improbable than some of the statements contained in them. If the reader desires to know the relation in which this and the like stories stand to the original Arthur legends, he will find it discussed in Sir F. Madden's Preface to his edition of "*Syr Gawayne*," which also contains a sketch of the very different views taken of Sir Gawayne by the different Romance writers.

Into this and other *literary* questions I do not enter here, as I have nothing to add to Sir F. Madden's statements ; but in the text of the Poem I have differed from him in some few readings, which will be found noticed in the Notes and Glossary.

As the manuscript is fast fading, I am glad that the existence of the Early English Text Society has enabled us to secure a wider diffusion of its contents before the original shall be no longer legible.

We want nothing but an increased supply of members to enable us to give to a large circle of readers many an equally interesting record of Early English minds.



# SYR GAWAYN AND THE GRENE KNYȝT.

## [FYTTE THE FIRST.]

### I.

- Sipen þe sege & þe assaut watȝ sesed at Troye,  
þe borȝ brittened & brent to brondez & askez,  
þe tulk þat þe trammes of tresoun þer wroȝt,  
4 Watȝ tried for his tricherie, þe trewest on erthe ;  
Hit watȝ Ennias þe athel, & his highe kynde,  
þat sipen depreced prouinces, & patrounes bicomē  
Welneȝe of al þe wele in þe west iles,  
8 Fro riche Romulus to Rome ricchis hym swyþe,  
With gret bobbaunce þat burȝe he biges vpon fyrst,  
& neuenes hit his aune nome, as hit now hat ;  
Ticius to Tuskan [turnes,] & teldes bigynnes ;  
12 Langaberde in Lumbardie lyftes vp homes ;  
& fer ouer þe French flod Felix Brutus  
On mony bonkkes ful brode Bretayn he setteȝ,  
wyth wynne ;  
16 Where werre, & wrake, & wonder,  
Bi syþeȝ hatȝ wont þer-inne,  
& oft boþe blysse & blunder  
Ful skete hatȝ skyfted synne.

[Fol. 91a.]  
After the siege of  
Troy

Romulus built  
Rome,

and Felix Brutus  
founded Britain,

a land of war and  
wonder,

and oft of bliss  
and blunder.

### II.

- 20 Ande quen þis Bretayn watȝ bigged bi þis burn rych,  
Bolde bredden þer-inne, baret þat lofden,  
In mony turned tyme tene þat wroȝten ;  
Mo ferlyes on þis folde han fallen here oft

Bold men in-  
creased in the  
land,

and many mar-  
vels happened.  
Of all Britain's  
kings Arthur was  
the noblest.

[Fol. 91b.]

Listen a while  
and ye shall hear  
the story of an  
"outrageous ad-  
venture."

- 24 þen in any oper þat I wot, syn þat ilk tyme.  
Bot of alle þat here bult of Bretaygne kynges  
Ay watȝ Arthur þe hendest, as I haf herde telle ;  
For-þi an aunter in erde I attle to schawe,  
28 þat a selly in siȝt summe men hit holden,  
& an outrage awenture of Arthureȝ wondereȝ ;  
If ȝe wyl lysten þis laye bot on littel quile,  
I schal telle hit, as-tit, as I in toun herde,  
32 *with tonge ;*  
As hit is stad & stoken,  
In stori stif & stronge,  
With lel letteres loken,  
36 In londe so hatȝ ben longe.

### III.

Arthur held at  
Camelot his  
Christmas feast,

with all the  
knights of the  
Round Table,

full fifteen days.

All was joy in  
hall and chamber,

among brave  
knights and  
lovely ladies,

the happiest  
under heaven.

- þis kyng lay at Camylot vpon kryst-masse,  
With mony luflych lorde, ledeȝ of þe best,  
Rekenly of þe rounde table alle þo rich breȝer,  
40 With ryche reuel oryȝt, & rechles merȝes ;  
þer tournayed tulkes bi-tymeȝ ful mony,  
Iusted ful Iolilē þise gentyle kniȝtes,  
Syþen kayred to þe court, caroles to make:  
44 For þer þe fest watȝ ilyche ful fifteen dayes,  
With alle þe mete & þe mirȝe þat men couȝe a-vyse ;  
Such glaumande gle glorious to here,  
Dere dyn vp-on day, daunsyng on nyȝtes,  
48 Al watȝ hap vpon heȝe in halleȝ & chambrez,  
With lordez & ladies, as leuest him þoȝt ;  
With all þe wele of þe worlde þay woned þer samen,  
þe most kyd knyȝteȝ vnder kryste seluen,  
52 & þe louelokkest ladies þat euer lif haden,  
& he þe comlokest kyng þat þe court haldes ;  
For al watȝ þis fayre folk in her first age,  
on sille ;  
56 þe hapnest vnder heuen,  
Kyng hyȝest mon of wylle,

Hit were<sup>1</sup> now gret nye to neuen  
So hardy a here on hille.

## IV.

- 60 Wyle nw 3er wat3 so 3ep þat hit wat3 nwe cummen, They celebrate  
the New Year  
with great joy.  
þat day doubble on þe dece wat3 þe douth serued,  
Fro þe kyng wat3 cummen *with kny3tes* in to þe halle,  
þe chauntre of þe chapel cheued to an ende ;
- 64 Loude crye wat3 þer kest of clerkez & oþer, [Fol. 92.]  
Nowel nayted o-newe, neuened ful ofte ;  
& syþen riche forth runnen to reche honde-selle,  
3e3ed 3eres 3iftes on hi3, 3elde hem bi hond, Gifts are de-  
manded and be-  
stowed.
- 68 Debated busily aboute þo giftes ;  
Ladies la3ed ful loude, þo3 þay lost haden,  
& he þat wan wat3 not wrothe, þat may 3e wel trawe.  
Alle þis mirþe þay maden to þe mete tyme ; Lordes and ladies  
take their seats  
at the table.
- 72 When þay had waschen, worpyly þay wenten to sete,  
þe best burne ay abof, as hit best semed ;  
Whene Guenore ful gay, grayþed in þe myddes, Queen Guenever  
appears gaily  
dressed.  
Dressed on þe dere des, dubbed al aboute,
- 76 Smal sendal bisides, a selure hir ouer  
Of tryed Tolouse, of Tars tapites in-noghe,  
þat were enbrawdred & beten wyth þe best gemmes,  
þat my3t be preued of prys wyth penyes to bye,
- 80                                   in daye ;  
    þe comlokest to discrye, A lady fairer of  
form might no  
one say he had  
ever before seen,  
    þer glent *with y3en* gray,  
    A semloker þat euer he sy3e,
- 84                                   Soth mo3t no mon say.

## V.

- Bot Arthure wolde not ete til al were serued, Arthur would  
not eat,  
He wat3 so Ioly of his Ioyfnes, & *sum-quatchild* gered,  
His lif liked hym ly3t, he louied þe lasse
- 88 Auper to lenge lye, or to longe sitte, nor would he  
long sit

<sup>1</sup> MS. werere.



until he had witnessed a "wondrous adventure" of some kind.

So bi-sied him his 3onge blod & his brayn wylde ;  
 & also ano<sup>per</sup> maner meued him eke,  
 þat he þur3 nobelay had nomen, he wolde neuer cte  
 92 Vpon such a dere day, er hym deuised were  
 Of sum auenturus þyng an vncoupe tale,  
 Of sum mayn meruayle, þat he myzt trawe,  
 Of<sup>1</sup> alderes, of armes, of o<sup>per</sup> auenturus,  
 96 O<sup>per</sup> sum segg hym bi-sozt of sum siker knyzt,  
 To Ioyne wyth hym in iustying in Iopardé to lay,  
 Lede lif for lyf, leue vchon o<sup>per</sup>,  
 As fortune wolde fulsun hom þe fayrer to haue.  
 100 þis wat3 [þe] kynges countenaunce where he in  
 court were,

At vch farand fest among his fre meny,  
 in halle ;

[Fol. 92b.]

He of face so  
 bold makes much  
 mirth with all.

104

þer-fore of face so fere,  
 He stiztle3 stif in stalle,  
 Ful 3ep in þat nw 3ere,  
 Much mirthe he mas with alle.

## VI.

The king talks  
 with his knights.

Gawayne,

Agrauayn,

Bishop Bawde-  
 wyn,  
 and Ywain sit  
 on the dais.

The first course  
 is served with  
 cracking of trum-  
 pets.

Thus þer stondes in stale þe stif kyng his-seluen,  
 108 Talkkande bfore þe hy3e table of trifles ful hende ;  
 There gode Gawan wat3 grayped, Gwenore bisyde,  
 & Agrauayn a la dure mayn on þat o<sup>per</sup> syde sittes,  
 Boþe þe kynges sister sunes, & ful siker kniztes ;  
 112 Bischoþ Bawdewyn abof bi-gine3 þe table,  
 & Ywan, Vryn son, ette wit hym-seluen ;  
 þise were dizt on þe des, & derworþly serued,  
 & siþen mony siker segge at þe sidborde3.  
 116 þen þe first cors come with crakkyng of trumpes,  
 Wyth mony baner ful bryzt, þat þer-bi henged,  
 Nwe nakryn noyse with þe noble pipes,  
 Wylde werbles & wyzt wakned lote,  
 120 þat mony hert ful hi3e hef at her towches ;

<sup>1</sup> Of of, in MS.

Dayntes dryuen þer-wyth of ful dere metes,  
 Foyssoun of þe fresche, & on so fele disches,  
 þat pine to fynde þe place þe peple bi-forne  
 124 For to sette þe syluener,<sup>1</sup> þat sere sewes halden,  
 on clothe ;

It consisted of all dainties in season.

128      Iche lede as he loued hym-selue  
              per laght *with*-outen lope,  
              Ay two had disches twelue,  
              Good ber, & bryzt wyn bope.

Each two had  
dishes twelve,  
good beer and  
bright wine both.

## VII.

Now wyl I of hor seruise say yow no more,  
For vch wy3e may wel wit no wont þat þer were ;  
132 An oþer noyse ful newe nezed bilue,  
þat þe lude myȝt haf leue lif-lode to cach.

**There was no want of anything.**

For vneþe wat3 þe noyce not a whyle sesed,  
& þe fyrst cource in þe court kyndely serued,

Scarcely had the first course commenced.

136 þer hales in at þe halle dor an aghlich mayster,  
On þe most on þe molde on mesure hyghe;  
Fro þe swyre to þe swange so sware & so pik,  
& his lyndes & his lymes so longe & so grete,

when there  
rushes in at the  
hall-door a  
knight :

140 Half etayn in erde I hope þat he were.

the tallest on  
earth  
[Fol. 93.]

Bot mon most I algate mynn hym to bene,  
& þat þe myriest in his muckel þat myȝt ride ;

he must have  
been.

For of bak & of brest al were his bodi sturne,  
144 Bot his wombe & his wast were worthily smale,  
& alle his fetures folzande, in forme þat he hade,  
ful clene :

His back and  
breast were  
great,  
but his belly and  
waist were small.

148      For wonder of his hwe men hade,  
Set in his semblaunt sene ;  
He ferde as freke were fade,  
& ouer-al enker grene.

## VIII.

Ande al grayped in grene þis gome & his wedes,  
152 A strayt cote ful streȝt, þat stek on his sides,

He was clothed  
entirely in green.

<sup>1</sup> syluøren (?) (dishes).

- A mere mantile abof, mensked *with-inne*,  
*With* pelure pured apert þe pane ful clene,  
*With* blyþe blaunner ful bryzt, & his hod boþe,  
 156 þat wat3la3t fro his lokke3, & layde on his schulderes ;  
 Heme wel haled, hose of þat same grene,  
 þat spenet on his sparlyr, & clene spures vnder,  
 Of bryzt golde, vpon silk bordes, barred ful ryche,  
 160 & scholes vnder schankes, þere þe schalk rides ;  
 & alle his vesture uerayly wat3 clene verdure,  
 Boþe þe barres of his belt & oþer blyþe stones,  
 þat were richely rayled in his aray clene,  
 164 Aboutte hym-self & his sadel, vpon silk werke3,  
 þat were to tor for to telle of tryfles þe halue,  
 þat were enbrauded abof, wyth bryddes & flyzes,  
 With gay gaudi of grene, þe golde ay in myddes ;  
 168 þe pendauntes of his payttrure, þe proude cropure,  
 His molaynes, & alle þe metail anamayld was þenne,  
 þe steropes þat he stod on, stayned of þe same,  
 & his arsoun3 al after, & his apæl sturtes,  
 172 þat euer glemered<sup>1</sup> & glent al of grene stones.  
 þe fole þat he ferkkes on, fyn of þat ilke,  
 sertayn ;  
 A grene hors gret & pikke,  
 A stede ful stif to strayne,  
 In brawdren brydel quik,  
 To þe gome he wat3 ful gayn.
- His spurs were of bright gold.
- His saddle was embroidered with birds and flies.
- The foal that he rode upon was green ;
- It was a steed full stiff to gulde.
- [Fol. 93b.]

## IX.

- Wel gay wat3 þis gome gered in grene,  
 180 & þe here of his hed of his hors swete ;  
 Fayre fannand fax vmbe-foldes his schulderes ;  
 A much berd as<sup>2</sup> a busk ouer his brest henges,  
 þat wyth his hizlich here, þat of his hed reches,  
 184 Wat3 euesed al vmbe-torne, a-bof his elbowes,
- Gaily was the knight attired.
- His great beard, like a bush, hung on his breast.

<sup>1</sup> glemed (?).<sup>2</sup> as as, in MS.

- þat half his armes þer vnder were halched in þe wyse  
 Of a kynges capados, þat closes his swyre.  
 þe mane of þat mayn hors much to hit lyke,  
 188 Wel cresped & cemmaed wyth knottes ful mony,  
 Folden in wyth fildore aboute þe fayre grene,  
 Ay a herle of þe here, an oper of golde ;  
 þe tayl & his toppyng twynnen of a sute,  
 192 & bounden boþe wyth a bande of a bryzt grene,  
 Dubbed wyth ful dere stonez, as þe dok lasted,  
 Syþen þrawn wyth a þwong a þwarle knot alofte,  
 þer mony bellez ful bryzt of brende golde rungen.  
 196 Such a fole vpon folde, ne freke þat hym rydes,  
 Wat3 neuer sene in þat sale wyth syzt er þat tyme,  
 with y3e ;  
 He loked as layt so lyzt,  
 200 So sayd al þat hym syze,  
 Hit semed as no mon myzt,  
 Vnder his dynttez dryze.

The horse's mane  
was decked with  
golden threads.

Its tail was  
bound with a  
green band.

Such a foal nor a  
knight were never  
before seen.

It seemed that no  
man might en-  
dure his dints.

## X.

- Wheþer hade he no helme ne hawb[e]rgh nauþer,  
 204 Ne no pysan, ne no plate þat pented to armes,  
 Ne no schafte, ne no schelde, to schwne ne to smyte,  
 Bot in his on honde he hade a holyn bobbe,  
 þat is grattest in grene, when greuez ar bare,  
 208 & an ax in his oper, a hoge & vn-mete,  
 A spetos sparþe to expoun in spelle quo-so myzt ;  
 þe hede of an elnzerde þe large lenkþe hade,  
 þe grayn al of grene stele & of golde hewen,  
 212 þe bit burnyst bryzt, with a brod egge,  
 As wel schapen to schere as scharp rasores ;  
 þe stele of a stif staf þe sturne hit bi-grypte,  
 þat wat3 wounden wyth yrn to þe wande3 ende,  
 216 & al bigrauen with grene, in gracios<sup>1</sup> werkes ;

The knight car-  
ried neither spear  
nor shield.

In one hand was  
a holly bough,

in the other an  
axe,

the edge of which  
was as keen as a  
sharp razor,

[Fol. 94.]

and the handle  
was encased in

<sup>1</sup> looks like *gracons* in *MS.*

iron, curiously  
"graven with  
green, in gracious  
works."

Thus arrayed the  
Green Knight  
enters the hall,

without saluting  
any one.

He asks for the  
"governor" of  
the company,

and looks for the  
most renowned.

A lace lapped aboute, þat louked at þe hede,  
& so after þe halme halched ful ofte,  
Wyth tryed tasselez þerto tacched in-noghe,  
220 On botounz of þe bryzt grene brayden ful ryche.  
þis hapel heldez hym in, & þe halle entres,  
Driuande to þe heȝe dece, dut he no woþe,  
Haylsed he neuer one, bot heȝe he ouer loked.  
224 þe fyrst word þat he warp, "wher is," he sayd,  
"þe gouernour of þis gyng ? gladly I wolde  
Se þat segg in syzt, & with hym self speke  
raysoun."

228 To knyzteȝ he kest his yȝe,  
& reled hym vp & doun,  
He stemmed & con studie,  
Quo walt þer most renoun.

# XI.

Much they mar-  
vel to see a man  
and a horse

as green as grass.

Never before had  
they seen such a  
sight as this.

They were afraid  
to answer,

and were as  
silent as if sleep  
had taken pos-  
session of them ;

some from fear  
and others from  
courtesy.

232 Ther watȝ loking on lenȝe, þe lude to be-holde,  
For vch mon had meruayle quat hit mene myzt,  
þat a hapel & a horse myzt such a hwe lach,  
As growe grene as þe gres & grener hit semed,  
236 þen grene aumayl on golde lowande bryzter ;  
Al studied þat þer stod, & stalked hym nerre,  
Wyth al þe wonder of þe worlde, what he worth  
schulde.  
For fele sellyez had þay sen, bot such neuer are,  
240 For-þi for fantoum & fayryȝe þe folk þere hit demed ;  
þer-fore to answere watȝ arȝe mony apel freke,  
& al stouned at his steuen, & stonstil seten,  
In a swoghe sylence þurȝ þe sale riche  
244 As al were slypped vpon slepe so slaked hor loteȝ  
in hyȝe ;  
I deme hit not al for doute,  
Bot sum for cortaysye,  
Bot let hym þat al schulde loute,  
248 Cast vnto þat wyȝe.

## XII.

- penn Arpour bifore þe hiȝ deceþatauenture byholdeȝ,  
 & rekenly hym reuerenced, for rad was he neuer,  
 252 & sayde, "wyȝe, welcum iwys to þis place,  
 þe hede of þis ostel Arthour I hat ;  
 Liȝt luflych adoun, & lenge, I þe praye,  
 & quat so þy wyll is, we schal wyt after." [syttēs,  
 256 "Nay, as help me," *quod* þe hapel, "he þat on hyȝe  
 To wone any quyle in þis won, hit watȝ not myn  
 Bot for þe los of þe lede is lyft vp so hyȝe, [ernde ;  
 & þy burȝ & þy burnes best ar holden,  
 260 Stifest vnder stel-gere on stedes to ryde,  
 þe wyȝtest & þe worpyest of þe worldes kynde,  
 Preue for to play wyth in oþer pure laykeȝ ;  
 & here is kydde cortaysye, as I haf herd carp,  
 264 & þat hatȝ wayned me hider, I-wyis, at þis tyme.  
 ȝe may be seker bi þis braunch þat I bere here,  
 þat I passe as in pes, & no plyȝt seche ;  
 For had I founded in fere, in feȝtyng wyse,  
 268 I haue a hauberghe at home & a helme boȝe,  
 A schelde, & a scharp spere, schinande bryȝt,  
 Ande oþer weppenes to welde, I wene wel als,  
 Bot for I wolde no were, my wedeȝ ar softer.  
 272 Bot if þou be so bold as alle burneȝ tellen,  
 þou wyl grant me godly þe gomen þat I ask,  
 bi ryȝt."
- Arthour con onsware,  
 276 & sayd, "*sir* cortays knyȝt,  
 If þou craue batayl bare,  
 Here fayleȝ þou not to fyȝt."

Arthur salutes  
the Green  
Knight,

[Fol. 94b.]  
bids him wel-  
come, and invites  
him to stay  
awhile.

The knight says  
that he will not  
tarry.

He seeks the  
most valiant that  
he may prove  
him.

He comes in  
peace.

At home, how-  
ever, he has both  
shield and spear.

Arthur assures  
him that he shall  
not fail to find an  
opponent worthy  
of him.

## XIII.

- "Nay, frayst I no fyȝt, in fayth I þe telle,  
 280 Hit arn aboute on þis bench bot berdleȝ chylder ;  
 If I were hasped in armes on a heȝe stede,  
 Here is no mon me to mach, for myȝteȝ so<sup>1</sup> wayke.

"I seek no fight,"  
says the knight.  
"Here are only  
beardless chil-  
dren."

Here is no man  
to match me.

<sup>1</sup> MS. fo.

- For-þy I craue in þis court a crystemas gomen,  
 Here are brave ones many, 284 For hit is 3ol & nwe 3er, & here ar 3ep mony ;  
 If any so hardy in þis hous holde3 hym-seluen,  
 Be so bolde in his blod, brayn in hys hede,  
 þat dar stifly strike a strok for an oþer,  
 if any be bold enough to 'strike a stroke for another,' 288 I schal gif hym of my gyft þys giserne ryche,  
 þis ax, þat is heué in-nogh, to hondele as hym lykes,  
 & I schal bide þe fyrst bur, as bare as I sitte.  
 If any freke be so felle to fonde þat I telle,  
 this axe shall be his ; [Fol. 95.] 292 Lepe lyztly me to, & lach þis weppen,  
 I quit clayme hit for euer, kepe hit as his auen,  
 & I schal stonde hym a strok, stif on þis flet,  
 but I shall give him a 'stroke' in return Ellez þou wyl di3t me þe dom to dele hym an oþer,  
 296 barlay ;  
 & 3et gif hym respite,  
 within a twelvemonth and a day." A twelmonyth & a day ;  
 Now hy3e, & let se tite  
 300 Dar any her-inne o3t say."

## XIV.

- Fear kept all silent. If he hem stowned vpon fyrst, stiller were þanno  
 Alle þe hered-men in halle, þe hy3 & þe lo3e ;  
 The knight rolled his red eyes about, and bent his bristly green brows. þe renk on his rounce hym ruched in his sadel,  
 304 & runisch-ly his rede y3en he reled aboute,  
 Bende his bresed bro3e3, bly-cande grene,  
 Wayued his berde for to wayte quo-so wolde ryse.  
 When non wolde kepe hym with carp he co3ed ful hy3e,  
 308 Ande rimed hym ful richley, & ryzt hym to speke :  
 "What, is þis Arpures hous," quod þe hapel þenne,  
 "þat al þe rous rennes of, þur3 ryalmes so mony ?  
 Where is now your sourquydrye & your conquestes,  
 312 Your gry[n]del-layk, & your greme, & your grete wordes ?  
 Forsooth the renown of the Round Table is overturned 'with a word of one man's speech.'"  
 Now is þe reuel & þe renoun of þe rounde table  
 Ouer-walt wyth a worde of on wy3es speche ;  
 For al dares for drede, with-oute dynt schewed !"  
 316 Wyth þis he la3es so loude, þat þe lorde greued ;

þe blod schot for scham in-to his schyre face  
& lere ;

Arthur blushes  
for shame.

- 320 He wex as wroth as wynde,  
So did alle þat þer were,  
þe kyng as kene bi kynde,  
þen stod þat stif mon nere.

He waxes as  
wroth as the  
wind.

## XV.

- Ande sayde, "hapel, by heuen þyn askyng is nys,  
324 & as þou foly hatz frayst, fynde þe be-houes ;  
I know no gome þat is gast of þy grete wordes.  
Gif me now þy geserne, vpon godez halue,  
& I schal bayþen þy bone, þat þou boden habbes."

He assures the  
knight that no  
one is afraid of  
his great words.

- 328 Lyztly lepez he hym to, & lazt at his honde ;  
þen feersly þat oper freke vpon fote lyztis.  
Now hatz Arthure his axe, & þe halme grypez,  
& sturnely sturez hit aboute, þatstryke wyth hit þoȝt.

[Fol. 95b.]

- 332 þe stif mon hym bifore stod vpon hyȝt,  
Herre þen ani in þe hous by þe hede & more ; [berde,  
Wyth sturne schere<sup>1</sup> þer he stod, he stroked his  
& wyth a countenance dryȝe he droȝ down his cote,  
336 No more mate ne dismayd for hys mayn dinteȝ,  
þen any burne vpon bench hade broȝt hym to drynk  
of wyne,

Arthur seizes his  
axe.

The knight,  
stroking his  
beard, awaits the  
blow, and with a  
"dry counten-  
ance" draws  
down his coat.

- Gawan, þat sate bi þe quene,  
340 To þe kyng he can enclyne,  
"I be-seche now with saȝez sene,  
þis melly mot be myne."

Sir Gawayne be-  
seches the king  
to let him under-  
take the blow.

## XVI.

"Wolde ȝe, worþilych lorde," quod Gawan to þe  
kyng,

- 344 "Bid me boȝe fro þis benche, & stonde by yow þere,  
þat I wyth-oute vylanye myȝt voyde þis table,  
& þat my logge lady lyked not ille,

He asks permis-  
sion to leave the  
table ; he says,

<sup>1</sup> chere (?).



- I wolde com to *your* counseyl, biforn *your* cort ryche.
- it is not meet  
that Arthur  
should be active  
in the matter,  
while so many  
bold ones sit  
upon bench.  
Although the  
weakest, he is  
quite ready to  
meet the Green  
Knight.
- 348 For me pink hit not semly, as hit is soþ knawen,  
þer such an askyng is heuened so hyȝe in *your* sale,  
þaȝȝe *your*-self betalenttyf to take hit to *your*-seluen,  
Whil mony so bolde yow aboute vpon bench sytten,  
352 þat vnder heuen, I hope, non haȝer er of wyllē,  
Ne better bodyes on bent, þer baret is rered ;  
I am þe wakkest, I wot, and of wyt feblest,  
& lest lur of my lyf, quo laytes þe soþe, [praise,  
356 Bot for as much as ȝe ar myn em, I am only to  
No bounté bot *your* blod I in my bodé knowe ;  
& syþen þis note is so nys, þat noȝt hit yow falles,  
& I haue frayned hit at yow fyrst, foldeȝ hit to me,  
360 & if I carp not comlyly, let alle þis cort rych,  
bout blame.”
- The nobles en-  
treat Arthur to  
“give Gawayne  
the game.”
- Ryche to-geder con roun,  
& syþen þay reddē alle same,  
364 To ryd þe kyng wyth croun,  
& gif Gawan þe game.

## XVII.

- [Fol. 96.] þen comaunded þe kyng þe knyȝt for to ryse ;  
& he ful radly vp ros, & ruchched hym fayre,  
The king gives  
his nephew his  
weapon,  
and tells him to  
keep heart and  
hand steady.
- 368 Kneled doun bifore þe kyng, & cacheȝ þat weppen ;  
& he luflyly hit hym laft, & lyfte vp his honde,  
& gef hym goddeȝ blessyng, & gladly hym biddes  
þat his hert & his honde schulde hardi be soþe.  
372 “Kepe þe cosyn,” quod þe kyng, “þat þou on kyrf  
sette,  
& if þou redeȝ hym ryȝt, redly I trowe,  
þat þou schal byden þe bur þat he schal bede after.”  
Gawan gotȝ to þe gome, with giserne in honde,  
376 & he baldly hym bydeȝ, he bayst neuer þe helder.  
þen carppeȝ to *sir* Gawan þe knyȝt in þe grene,  
“Refourme we oure for-wardes, er we fyrre passe.  
Fyrst I eþe þe, hapel, how þat þou hattēs,
- The Green  
Knight enquires  
the name of his  
opponent.

380 þat þou me telle truly, as I tryst may?" [hatte,

"In god fayth," quod þe goode knyzt, "Gawan I

þat bede þe þis buffet, quat-so bi-falleȝ after,

& at þis tyme twelmonyth take at þe anoper,

384 Wyth what weppen so<sup>1</sup> þou wylt, & wyth nowyȝ elleȝ,  
on lyue."

þat oper on-swareȝ agayn,

"Sir Gawan, so mot I pryue,

388 As I am ferly fayn,

þis dint þat þou schal dryue."

Sir Gawayne telle  
him his name,  
and declares that  
he is willing to  
give and receive  
a blow.

<sup>1</sup> MS. fo.

The other thereof  
is glad.

### XVIII.

"Bigog," quod þe grene knyzt, "sir Gawan, melykes,

þat I schal fange at þy fust þat I haf frayst here;

392 & þou hatȝ redily rehersed, bi resoun ful trwe,

Clanly al þe couenauzt þat I þe kyng asked,

Saf þat þou schal siker me, segge, bi þi trawþe,

þat þou schal seche me þi-self, where-so þou hopes

396 I may be funde vpon folde, & foch þe such wages

As þou deles me to day, bifore þis doube ryche."

"Where schulde I wale þe," quod Gauan, "where  
is þy place?

I wot neuer where þou wonyes, bi hym þat me wrozt,

400 Ne I know not þe, knyzt, þy cort, ne þi name.

Bot teche me truly þer-to, & telle me howe þou hattes,

& I schal ware alle my wyt to wyne me peder,

& þat I swere þe for soþe, & by my seker trawþe."

404 "þat is in-nogh in nwe ȝer, hit nedes no more,"

Quod þe gome in þe grene to Gawan þe hende,

"ȝif I þe telle trwly, quen I þe tape haue,

& þou me smopely hatȝ smyten, smartly I þe teche

408 Of my hous, & my home, & myn owen nome,

þen may þou frayst my fare, & forwardeȝ holde,

& if I spende no speche, þenne spedȝ þou þe better,

For þou may leng in þy londe, & layt no fyrre,

412 bot slokes;

"It pleases me  
well, Sir Ga-  
wayne," says the  
Green Knight,  
"that I shall re-  
ceive a blow from  
thy fist;  
but thou must  
swear that thou  
wilt seek me,

to receive the  
blow in return."

"Where shall I  
seek thee?" says  
Sir Gawayne;

"tell me thy  
name and abode  
and I will find  
thee."

[Fol. 96b.]

"When thou  
haast smitten  
me," says the  
knight, "then  
tell I thee of my  
home and name;

if I speak not at  
all, so much the  
better for thee.

Take now thy  
grim tool, and let  
us see how thou  
knocest."

Ta now þy grymme tole to þe,  
& let se how þou cnokeȝ."

"Gladly sir, for soþe,"

416

Quod Gawan ; his ax he strokes.

### XIX.

The Green  
Knight

puts his long  
lovely locks aside  
and lays bare his  
neck.

Sir Gawayne lets  
fall his axe

and severs the  
head from the  
body.

The head falls to  
the earth.  
Many kick it aside  
with their feet.

The knight never  
falters ;

he rushes forth,  
seizes his head,

steps into the  
saddle,  
holding the while  
the head in his  
hand by the hair,

and turns his  
horse about.  
[Fol. 97.]

The grene knyȝt vpon grounde grayþely hym dresses,  
A littel lut *with* þe hede, þe lere he discouereȝ,

His longe louelych lokkeȝ he layd ouer his croun,

420 Let þe naked nec to þe note schewe.

Gauan gripped to his ax, & gederes hit on hyȝt,  
þe kay fot on þe folde he be-fore sette,

Let hit doun lyȝtly lyȝt on þe naked,

424 þat þe scharp of þe schalk schyndered þe bones,

& schrank þurȝ þe schyire grece, & scade hit *in*  
twynne,

þat þe bit of þe broun stel bot on þe grounde.

þe fayre hede fro þe halce hit [felle] to þe erþe,

428 þat fele hit foyned wyth her fete, þere hit forth roled ;

þe blod brayd fro þe body, þat blykked on þe grene ;

& nawþer faltered ne fel þe freke neuer þe helder,

Bot styþly he start forth vpon styf schonkes,

432 & ru[n]yschly he raȝt out, þere as renkkeȝ stoden,

Laȝt to his lufly hed, & lyft hit vp sone ;

& syþen boȝeȝ to his blonk, þe brydel he cachcheȝ,

Steppeȝ *in* to stel bawe & strydeȝ alofte,

436 & his hede by þe here *in* his honde haldeȝ ;

& as sadly þe segge hym *in* his sadel sette,

As non vnhap had hym ayled, þaȝ hedleȝ he<sup>1</sup> we[re],

*in* stedde ;

440 He brayde his bluk<sup>2</sup> aboute,

þat vgly bodi þat bledde,

Moni on of hym had doute,

Bi þat his resounȝ were redde.

<sup>1</sup> MS. ho.

<sup>2</sup> blunk (?).

## XX.

- 444 For þe hede in his honde he haldez vp euen,  
 To-ward þe derrest on þe dece he dressez þe face,  
 & hit lyfte vp þe yze-lyddez, & loked ful brode,  
 & meled þus much with his muthe, as ȝe may now here.
- 448 "Loke, Gawan, þou be grayþe to go as þou hettez,  
 & layte as lelly til þou me, lude, fynde,  
 As þou hatz hette in þis halle, herande pise knyztēs ;  
 To þe grene chapel þou chose, I charge þe to fotte,  
 452 Such a dunt as þou hatz dalt disserued þou habbez,  
 To be ȝederly ȝolden on nw ȝeres morn ;  
 þe knyzt of þe grene chapel men knowen me mony ;  
 For-þi me forto fynde if þou fraystez, faylez þou neuer,  
 456 þer-fore com, oþer recreaunt be calde þe be-houeus."  
 With a runisch rout þe raynez he tornez,  
 Halled out at þe hal-dor, his hed in his hande,  
 þat þe fyr of þe flynt flaze fro fole houes.
- 460 To quat kyth he be-com, knwe non þere,  
 Neuer more þen þay wyste fram queþen he watz won-  
                   what þenne ? [nen ;  
       þe kyng & Gawen þare,
- 464 At þat grene þay laze & grenne,  
 ȝet breued watz hit ful bare,  
 A meruayl among þo menne.

The head lifts up  
its eyelids,

and addresses Sir  
Gawayne: "Look  
thou, be ready to  
go as thou hast  
promised,

and seek till thou  
findest me.

Get thee to the  
Green Chapel,

there to receive  
a blow on New  
Year's morn.

Fall thou never ;

come, or recreant  
be called."

The Green  
Knight then  
rushes out of the  
hall, his head in  
his hand.

At that green one  
Arthur and Ga-  
wayne "laugh  
and grin."

## XXI.

- þaz Arþer þe hende kyng at hert hade wonder,  
 468 He let no semblaunt be sene, bot sayde ful hyȝe  
 To þe comlych quene, wyth cortays speche,  
 "Dere dame, to day demay yow neuer ;  
 Wel by-commes such craft vpon cristmasse,  
 472 Laykyng of enterludez, to laze & to syng.  
 Among pise, kynde caroles of knyztēz & ladyez ;  
 Neuer-þe-lece to my mete I may me wel dres,  
 For I haf sen a selly, I may not for-sake."  
 476 He glent vpon sir Gawen, & gaynly he sayde,

Arthur addresses  
the queen :

"Dear dame, be  
not dismayed ;  
such marvels  
well become the  
Christmas fes-  
tival ;

I may now go to  
meat.

Sir Gawayne,  
hang up thine  
axe." [Fol. 97b.]

"Now sir, heng vp þyn ax, þat hatȝ in-nogh hewen."

& hit watȝ don abof þe dece, on doser to henge,  
þer alle men for meruayl myȝt on hit loke,

480 & bi trwe tytel þer-of to telle þe wonder.

The king and his  
knights sit feast-  
ing at the board  
till day is ended.

þenne þay boȝed to a borde þise burnes to-geder,  
þe kyng & þe gode knyȝt, & kene men hem serued  
Of alle dayntyȝ double, as derrest myȝt falle,

484 Wyth alle maner of mete & mynstralcie boȝe ;

Wyth wele walt þay þat day, til worþed an ende,  
in londe.

Now beware, Sir  
Gawayne, lest  
thou fall to seek  
the adventure  
that thou hast  
taken in hand.

488

Now þenk wel, sir Gawan,  
For woȝe þat þou ne wonde,  
þis auenture forto frayn,  
þat þou hatȝ tan on honde.

## [FYTTE THE SECOND.]

### I.

This marvel  
serves to keep up  
a brisk conversa-  
tion in Court.

492 **T** HIS hanselle hatȝ Arthur of auenturus on fyrst,  
In ȝonge ȝer, for he ȝerned ȝelpyng to here,

Thaȝ hym wordeȝ were wane, when þay to setewenten ;  
Now ar þay stoken of sturne werk staf-ful her hond.  
Gawan watȝ glad to be-gynne þose gomneȝ in halle,

496 Bot þaȝ þe ende be heuy, haf ȝe no wonder ;

For þaȝ men ben mery in mynde, quen þay han  
mayn drynk,

The year passes  
full quickly and  
never returns.

A ȝere ȝernes ful ȝerne, & ȝeldeȝ neuer lyke,  
þe forme to þe fynisment foldeȝ ful selden.

500 For-þi þis ȝol ouer-ȝede, & þe ȝere after,  
& vche sesoun serlepes sued after oȝer ;

After Christmas  
comes the "crab-  
bed Lenten."

After crysten-masse com þe crabbed lentoun,  
þat fraysteȝ flesch wyth þe fysche & fode more symple ;

504 Bot þenne þe weder of þe worlde wyth wynter hit  
þrepeȝ,

Spring sets in and  
warm showers  
descend ;

Colde clengeȝ adoun, cloudeȝ vp-lyften,  
Schyre schedeȝ þe rayn in schowreȝ ful warme,

Falleȝ vpon fayre flat, flowreȝ pere schewen,  
508 Boȝe groundeȝ & þe greueȝ grene ar her wedeȝ,  
Bryddeȝ busken to bylde, & bremlych syngen,  
For solace of þe softe somer þat sues þer-after,  
bi bonk ;  
512 & blossomȝ holne to blowe,  
Bi raweȝ rych & ronk,  
þen noteȝ noble in-noȝe,  
Ar herde in wod so wlonk.

the groves be-  
come green ;  
birds build and  
sing,  
for joy of the  
summer that fol-  
lows ;

blossoms begin  
to bloom,

and noble notes  
are heard in the  
woods.  
[Ed.] 99

## II.

516 After þe sesoun of somer wyth þe soft wynde,  
 Quen zeferus sylflez hym-self on sedeȝ & erbeȝ,  
 Wela-wynne is þe wort þat woxes þer-oute,  
 When þe donkande dewe dropez of þe leuez,

520 To bide a blysful blusch of þe bryȝt sunne.  
 Bot þen hyȝes heruest, & hardenes hym sone,  
 Warneȝ hym for þe wynter to wax ful rype ;  
 He dryues wyth droȝt þe dust for to ryse,

524 Fro þe face of þe folde to flyȝe ful hyȝe ;  
 Wrope wynde of þe welkyn wrasteleȝ with þe sunne,  
 þe leuez lancen fro þe lynde, & lyȝten on þe grounde,  
 & al grayes þe gres, þat grene watȝ ere ;

528 þenne al rypeȝ & roteȝ þat ros vpon fyrst,  
 & þus ȝirneȝ þe ȝere in ȝisterdayeȝ mony,  
 & wynter wyndeȝ aȝayn, as þe worlde askeȝ  
 no sage.

532 Til meȝel-mas mone,  
 Watȝ cumen wyth wynter wage ;  
 þen þenkkeȝ Gawan ful sone,  
 Of his anious uyage.

Then the soft  
winds of summer,  
 beautiful are the  
flowers wet with  
dew-drops.  
 But harvest ap-  
proaches soon,  
 and drives the  
dust about.  
 The leaves drop  
off the trees,  
 the grass becom-  
es gray, and all  
ripens and rots.  
 Winter winds  
round again,  
 and then Sir Ga-  
wayne thinks of  
his dread journey.

### III.

536 ȝet quyl al-hal-day with Arþer he langes,  
& he made a fare on þat feſt, for þe frekeȝ ſake,  
With much reuel & ryche of þe rounde table ;

On All-hallows  
day Arthur  
makes a feaſt for  
his nephew's  
ſake.

- Knyzteȝ ful cortays & comlych ladies,  
 540 Al for luf of þat lede in longynge þay were,  
 Bot neuer-þe-lece ne þe later þay neuened bot merþe,  
 Mony ioyleȝ for þat ientyle iapeȝ þer maden.  
 For aftter mete, *with mournyng* he meleȝ to his eme,  
 544 & spekeȝ of his passage, & pertly he sayde,  
 "Now, lege lorde of my lyf, leue I yow ask ;  
 ȝe knowe þe cost of þis cace, kepe I no more  
 To telle yow teneȝ þer-of neuer bot trifel ;  
 548 Bot I am boun to þe bur barely to morne,  
 To sech þe gome of þe grene, as god wyl me wysse."  
 þenne þe best of þe burȝ boȝed to-geder,  
 Aywan, & Errik, & oþer ful mony,  
 (Fol. 90b.) 552 Sir Doddinaual de Sauage, þe duk of Clarence,  
 Launcelot, & Lyonel, & Lucan þe gode,  
 Sir Boos, & sir Byduer, big men boþe,  
 & mony oþer mensful, *with* Mador de la Port.  
 556 Alle þis compayny of court com þe kyng nerre,  
 For to counseyl þe knyȝt, with care at her hert ;  
 þere watȝ much derue<sup>1</sup> doel driuen in þe sale,  
 þat so worthe as Wawan schulde wende on þat  
 ernde,  
 560 To dryȝe a delful dynt, & dele no more  
 wyth bronde.  
 þe knyȝt mad ay god chere,  
 & sayde, "quat schuld I wonde,  
 564 Of destines derf & dere,  
 What may mon do bot fonde?"
- After meat, Sir Gawayne thus speaks to his uncle :  
 "Now, lege lord, I ask leave of you,  
 for I am bound on the morn to seek the Green Knight."*
- Many nobles, the best of the court, counsel and comfort him.  
 Much sorrow prevails in the hall.*
- (Gawayne declares that he has nothing to fear.*

## IV.

- He dowelleȝ þer al þat day, and dresseȝ on þe morn,  
 Askeȝ erly hys armeȝ, & alle were þay broȝt  
 568 Fyrst a tule tapit, tyȝt ouer þe flet,  
 & miche watȝ þe gyld gere þat glent þer alofte ;  
 þe stif mon steppeȝ þeron, & þe stel hondeleȝ,  
<sup>1</sup> derne (?).
- (In the morn he makes for his arms.  
 spread  
 W,  
 þe*

- Dubbed in a dublet of a dere tars,  
 572 & syþen a crafty capados, closed aloft,  
 þat wyth a bryzt blaunner was bounden *with-inne* ;  
 þenne set þay þe sabatoun; vpon þe segge fote;,  
 His lege; lapped in stel *with* luflych greue;,  
 576 *With* polayne; piched þer-to, policed ful clene,  
 Aboute his kne; knaged wyth knote; of golde ;  
 Queme quyssewes þen, þat coyntlych closed  
 His thik þrawen þy;e;,  
 580 & syþen þe brawdenn bryne of bryzt stel rynges;,  
 Vmbe-weued þat wy;,  
 & wel bornyst brace vpon his boþe armes,  
*With* gode cowters & gay, & gloues of plate,  
 584 & alle þe godlych gere þat hym gayn schulde  
 þat tyde ;  
 Wyth ryche cote armure,  
 His gold spore; spend *with* pryde,  
 588 Gurde wyth a bront ful sure,  
*With* silk sayn vmbe his syde.
- He is dubbed in a dublet of Tarsic silk, and a well-made hood.  
 They set steel shoes on his feet, and lap his legs in steel greaves.  
 Fair cuisses enclose his thighs,  
 and afterwards they put on the steel habergeon,  
 well-burnished braces, elbow pieces, and gloves of plate.  
 Over all this is placed the coat armour. His spurs are then fixed, and his sword is attached to his side by a silken girdle.

## V.

- When he wat; hasped in armes, his harnays wat;  
 þe lest lachet ou[þ]er loupe lemed of golde ; [ryche,  
 592 So harnayst as he wat; he herkne; his masse,  
 Offred & honoured at þe he;e auter ;  
 Syþen he come; to þe kyng & to his cort fere;,  
 Lache; lufly his leue at lorde; & ladye; ;  
 596 & þay hym kyst & conueyed, bikende hym to kryst.  
 Bi þat wat; Gryngolet grayth, & gurde *with* a sadel,  
 þat glemed ful gayly *with* mony golde frenges,  
 Ay quere naylet ful nwe for þat note ryched ;  
 600 þe brydel barred aboute, *with* bryzt golde bounden;  
 þe apparayl of þe payttrure, & of þe proude skyrte;,  
 þe cropore, & þe couertor, acorded wyth þe arsounes ;  
 & al wat; rayled on red ryche golde nayle;,  
 604 þat al glytered & glent as glem of þe sunne.
- [Fol. 98a.]  
 Thus arrayed the knight hears mass,  
 and afterwards takes leave of Arthur and his court.  
 By that time his horse Gringolet was ready,  
 the harness of which glittered like the "gleam of the sun."



Then Sir Ga-  
wayne sets his  
helmet upon his  
head,

fastened behind  
with a "uri-  
soun,"  
richly embroi-  
dered with gema.

The circle around  
the helmet was  
decked with dia-  
monds.

þenne hentes he þe helme, & hastily hit kysses,  
þat watȝ stapled stifly, & stoffed wyth-inne;  
Hit watȝ hyȝe on his hede, hasped bihynde,

- 608 Wyth a lyȝtli vrysoun ouer þe suentayle,  
Enbrawden & bounden wyth þe best gemmeȝ,  
On brode sylkyn borde, & bryddeȝ on semeȝ,  
As papiayeȝ paynted pernyng bitwene,  
612 Tortors & trulofeȝ entayled so þyk,  
As mony burde þer-aboutȝ had ben seuen wynter  
in toune;

- 616 þe cercle watȝ more o prys,  
þat vmbe-clypped hys croun,  
Of diamaunteȝ a deuys,  
þat boȝe were bryȝt & broun.

## VI.

Then they show  
him his shield  
with the "pent-  
angle" of pure  
gold.

The "pentangle"  
was devised by  
Solomon as a  
token of truth.

[Fol. 99b.]

It is called the  
endless knot.

It well becomes  
the good Sir Ga-  
wayne,

Then þay schewed hym þe schelde, þat was of schyr  
gouleȝ,

- 620 Wyth þe pentangel de-paynt of pure golde hweȝ;  
He braydeȝ hit by þe baude-ryk, aboutȝ þe hals kesteȝ,  
þat bisemed þe segge semlyly fayre.  
& quy þe pentangel apendeȝ to þat prynce noble,  
624 I am in tent yow to telle, þof tary hyt me schulde;  
Hit is a syngne þat Salamon set sum-quyle,  
In bytoknyng of trawþe, bi tytȝle þat hit habbeȝ,  
For hit is a figure þat haldeȝ fyue poynteȝ,  
628 & vche lyne vmbe-lappeȝ & loukeȝ in oper,  
& ay quere hit is endeȝleȝ,<sup>1</sup> & Englych hit callen  
Ouer-al, as I here, þe endeles knot.  
For-þy hit acordeȝ to þis knyȝt, & to his cler armeȝ,  
632 For ay faythful in fyue & sere fyue syȝeȝ,  
Gawan watȝ for gode knawen, & as golde pureȝ,  
Voyded of vche vylany, wyth vertueȝ<sup>2</sup> ennourned  
in mote;  
636 For-þy þe pen-tangel nwe  
He ber in schelde & cote,

<sup>1</sup> MS. emdeȝleȝ.

<sup>2</sup> MS. ververtueȝ.

As tulk of tale most trwe,  
& gentylest knyȝt of lote.

a knight the  
truest of spech  
and the fairest  
of form.

## VII.

- 640 Fyrst he watȝ funden faultleȝ in his fyue wytteȝ,  
& efte fayled neuer þe freke in his fyue fyngres,  
& alle his aſyaunce vpon folde watȝ in þe fyue woundeȝ  
þat Cryst kaȝt on þe croys, as þe crede telleȝ ;
- 644 & quere-so-euer þys mon in melly watȝ stad,  
His þro þoȝt watȝ in þat, þurȝ alle oþer þyngeȝ,  
þat alle his forſnes he fong at þe fyue ioȝeȝ,  
þat þe hende heuen quene had of hir chylde ;
- 648 At þis cauſe þe knyȝt comlyche hade  
In þe more half of his ſchelde hir ymage depaynted,  
þat quen he blusched þerto, his belde neuer payred.  
þe fyrst<sup>1</sup> fyue þat I finde þat þe frek vſed,
- 652 Watȝ fraunchyſe, & felaiȝſchyp for-be<sup>2</sup> al þyng ;  
His clannes & his cortaysye croked were neuer,  
& pite, þat paſſeȝ alle poynteȝ, þyſe pure fyue  
Were harder happed on þat haȝel þen on any oþer.
- 656 Now alle þeſe fyue ſyþeȝ, forſoþe, were fetled on þis  
knyȝt,  
& vchone halched in oþer, þat non ende hade,  
& fyched vpon fyue poynteȝ, þat fayld neuer,  
Ne ſamned neuer in no ſyde, ne ſundred nouȝ[er],
- 660 With-oute ende at any noke [a]i quere fynde,  
Where-euer þe gomen bygan, or glod to an ende.  
þer-fore on his ſchene ſchelde ſchapen watȝ þe knot,  
þus alle wyth red golde vpon rede gowleȝ,
- 664 þat is þe pure pentaungel wyth þe peple called,  
with lore.
- Now grayped is Gawan gay,  
& laȝt his launce ryȝt þore,  
& gef hem alle goud day,  
He wende for euer more.

He was found  
faultleſſe in his  
five wits.

His truſt was in  
the five woundeȝ.

The image of the  
Virgin was de-  
picted upon his  
ſhield.

In cleannes and  
courteſy he was  
never found  
wanting,

therefore was the  
endleſſe knot ſuat-  
ened on his  
ſhield.

[Fol. 100.]

Sir Gawayne  
ſeiſes his lance  
and bide all  
"good day."

<sup>1</sup> MS. fyft.

<sup>2</sup> for-bi (r).

## VIII.

He spurs his  
horse and goes on  
his way.

He sperred þe sted with þe spureȝ, & sprong on his  
way,

So stif þat þe ston fyr stroke out þer-after ;

All that saw that  
seemly one  
mourned in their  
heartis.

672 Al þat seȝ þat semly syked in hert,  
& sayde soply al same segges til oþer,  
Carande for þat comly, " bi Kryst, hit is scape,  
þat þou, leude, schal be lost, þat art of lyf noble !

They declared  
that his equal  
was not to be  
found upon  
earth.

676 To fynde hys fere vpon folde, in fayth is not eþe ;  
Warloker to haf wroȝt had more wyt bene,  
& haf dyȝt ȝonder dere a duk to haue worþed ;  
A lowande leder of ledeȝ in londe hym wel semeȝ,

It would have  
been better for  
him to have been  
a leader of men,  
than to die by the  
hands of " an  
elvish man."

680 & so had better haf ben þen britned to noȝt,  
Hadet wyth an aluisch mon, for angardeȝ pryde.  
Who knew euer any kyng such counsel to take,  
As knyȝteȝ in cauelounȝ on cryst-masse gomneȝ !"

Much was the  
warm water that  
poured from eyes  
that day.

684 Wel much watȝ þe warme water þat waltered of yȝen,  
When þat semly syre soȝt fro þo woneȝ  
þat<sup>1</sup> daye ;

He made non abode,

688 Bot wyȝtly went hys way,  
Mony wylsum way he rode,  
þe bok as I herde say.

Meanwhile many  
a weury way goes  
Sir Gawayne.

## IX.

Now rides the  
knight through  
the realms of  
England.

Now rideȝ þis renk þurȝ þe ryalme of Logres,

692 Sir Gauan on Godeȝ halue, þaȝ hym no gomen þoȝt ;  
Oft, leudleȝ alone, he lengeȝ on nyȝteȝ,

He has no com-  
panion but his  
horse.

þer he fonde noȝt hym byfore þe fare þat he lyked ;  
Hade he no fere bot his fole, bi frytheȝ & dounneȝ,

No men does he  
see till he ap-  
proches North  
Wales.

696 Ne no gome bot God, bi gate wyth to karp,  
Til þat he neȝed ful noghe<sup>2</sup> is to þe Norþe Wales ;  
Alle þe iles of Anglesay on lyft half he haldeȝ,  
& fareȝ ouer þe fordeȝ by þe for-londeȝ,

<sup>1</sup> MS. þad.

<sup>2</sup> nyȝhe (?).

- 700 Ouer at þe Holy-Hede, til he hade eft bonk  
 In þe wyldrenesse of Wyrle; wonde þer bot lyte  
 þat aþer God oþer gome wyth goud hert louied.  
 & ay he frayned, as he ferde, at frekeþ þat he met,  
 704 If þay hade herde any karp of a knyzt grene,  
 In any grounde þer-about, of þe grene chapel;<sup>1</sup>  
 & al nykked hym wyth nay, þat neuer in her lyue  
 þay seþe neuer no segge þat watþ of suche hweþ  
 708 of grene.  
 þe knyzt tok gates straunge,  
 In mony a bonk vnbene,  
 His cher ful oft con chaunge,  
 712 þat chapel er he myzt sene.
- From Holyhead  
he passes into  
Wirral.  
[Fol. 100b.]  
There he finds  
but few that loved  
God or man.  
He enquires after  
the Green Knight  
of the Green  
Chapel,  
but can gain no  
tidings of him.  
His cheer oft  
changed before  
he found the  
Chapel.

## X.

- Mony klyf he ouer-clambe in contrayeþ straunge,  
 Fer floten fro his frendeþ fremedly he rydeþ;  
 At vche warþe oþer water þer þe wyþe passed,  
 716 He fonde a foo hym byfore, bot ferly hit were,  
 & þat so foule & so felle, þat feþt hym by-hode;  
 So mony meruayl bi mount þer þe mon fyndeþ,  
 Hit were to tore for to telle of þe tenþe dole.  
 720 Sumwhyle wyth wormeþ he werreþ, & with wolues  
 als,  
 Sumwhyle wyth wodwos, þat woned in þe knarreþ,  
 Boþe wyth bulleþ & boreþ, & boreþ oþer-quyle,  
 & etayneþ, þat hym a-nelede, of þe heþe felle;  
 724 Nade he ben duþty & dryþe, & dryþtyn had serued,  
 Douteles he hade ben ded, & dreped ful ofte.  
 For werre wrathed hym not so much, þat wynter  
 was wors,  
 When þe colde cler water fro þe cloudeþ schadden,  
 728 & fres er hit falle myzt to þe fale erþe;  
 Ner slayn wyth þe slete he sleped in his yrnas,  
 Mo nyþteþ þen in-noghe in naked rokkeþ,
- Many a cliff he  
climbed over;  
many a ford and  
stream he cross-  
ed, and every-  
where he found a  
foe.  
It were too te-  
dious to tell the  
tenth part of his  
adventures  
with serpents,  
wolves, and wild  
men;  
with bulls, bears,  
and boars.  
Had he not been  
both brave and  
good, doubtless  
he had been dead.  
The sharp winter  
was far worse  
than any war that  
ever troubled  
him.

<sup>1</sup> MS. chapel.

- þer as claterande fro þe crest þe colde borne rennez,  
 732 & hengeð heze ouer his hede in hard ysse-ikkles.  
 þus in peryl, & payne, & plytes ful harde,  
 Bi contray carye; þis knyzt, tyl kryst-masse euen,  
 al one;  
 736 þe knyzt wel þat tyde,  
 To Mary made his mone,  
 þat ho hym red to ryde,  
 & wysse hym to sum wone.
- Thus in peril he  
 travels till Christ-  
 mas-eve.  
 To the Virgin  
 Mary he prays to  
 guide him to  
 some abode.  
 [Fol. 101.]

## XI.

- On the morn Sir 740 Bi a mounte on þe morne meryly he rydes,  
 Gawayne finde  
 himself in a deep  
 forest,  
 where were old  
 oaks many a  
 hundred.  
 Many sad birds  
 upon bare twigs  
 piped piteously  
 for the cold.  
 Through many a  
 mire he goes, that  
 he may celebrate  
 the birth of  
 Christ.  
 He beseeches the  
 Virgin Mary to  
 direct him to  
 some lodging  
 where he may  
 hear mass.  
 Blessing himself,  
 he says, "Cross  
 of Christ, speed  
 me!"
- 744 þe hasel & þe hazþorne were harled al samen,  
 With roze raged mosse rayled ay-where,  
 With mony brydde; vnblyþe vpon bare twyges,  
 þat pitosly þer piped for pyne of þe colde.  
 748 þe gome vpon Gryngolet glyde; hem vnder,  
 þur; mony misy & myre, mon al hym one,  
 Carande for his costes, lest he ne keuer schulde,  
 To se þe seruy<sup>1</sup> of þat syre, þat on þat self nyzt  
 752 Of a burde wat; borne, oure baret to quelle;  
 & perfore sykyng he sayde, "I be-seche þe, lorde,  
 & Mary, þat is myldest moder so dere,  
 Of sum herber, þer hezly I myzt here masse.  
 756 Ande þy matyne; to-morne, mekely I ask,  
 & þer-to prestly I pray my pater & aue,  
 & crede."  
 He rode in his prayere,  
 760 & cryed for his mysdede,  
 He sayned hym in syþes sere,  
 & sayde "cros Kryst me spede!"

<sup>1</sup> seruyce (?).

## XII.

- Nade he sayned hym-self, segge, bot þrye,  
 Er he watȝ war in þe wod of a won in a mote.  
 Abot a launde, on a lawe, loken vnder boȝeȝ,  
 Of mony borelyth bole, aboute bi þe dicheȝ ;  
 A castel þe comlokest þat euer knyȝt aȝte,  
 768 Pyched on a prayere, a park al aboute,  
 With a pyked palays, pyned ful þik,  
 þat vmbe-teȝe mony tre mo þen two myle.  
 þat holde on þat on syde þe haȝel auysed,  
 772 As hit schemered & schon þurȝ þe schyre okeȝ ;  
 þenne hatȝ he hendly of his helme, & heȝly he þonkeȝ  
 Iesus & say[nt] Gilyan, þat gentyle ar boȝe,  
 þat cortaysly hade hym kydde, & his cry herkened. [Fol. 101b.]  
 776 "Now bone hostel," coȝe þe burne, "I be-seche  
 yow ȝette !"
- þenne gedereȝ he to Gryngolet with þe gilt heleȝ,  
 & he ful chauncely hatȝ chosen to þe chef gate,  
 þat broȝt bremly þe burne to þe bryge ende,  
 780 in haste ;  
 þe bryge watȝ breme vp-brayde,  
 þe ȝateȝ wer stoken faste,  
 þe walleȝ were wel arayed,  
 784 Hit dut no wyndeȝ blaste.

Scarcely had he  
blessed himself  
thrice

when he saw a  
dwelling in the  
wood, set on a  
hill,  
the comeliest  
castle that knight  
ever owned.

It shone as the  
sun through the  
bright oaks.

Sir Gawayne goes  
to the chief gate,

and finds the  
draw-bridge  
raised, and the  
gates shut fast.

## XIII.

- þe burne bode on bonk, þat on blonk houed,  
 Of þe depe double dich þat drof to þe place,  
 þe walle wod in þe water wonderly depe,  
 788 Ande eft a ful huge heȝt hit haled vpon lofte,  
 Of harde hewen ston vp to þe tableȝ,  
 Enbaned vnder þe abataylment, in þe best lawe ;  
 & syȝen garyteȝ ful gaye gered bi-twene,  
 792 Wyth mony luflych loupe, þat louked ful clene ;  
 A better barbican þat burne blusched vpon neuer ;  
 & innermore he be-helde þat halle ful hyȝe,

The knight abides  
on the bank,

and observes the  
"huge height,"

with its battle-  
ments and watch  
towers.

Bright and long  
were its round  
towers,

with their well-  
made capitals.

He thinks it fair  
enough if he  
might only come  
within the  
cloister.

He calls, and soon  
there comes a  
porter to know  
the knight's er-  
rand.

- Towre tekled bytwene trochet ful pik,  
796 Fayre fylrokez þat fyzed, & ferlyly long,  
With cornon coprounes, craftyly sleje;  
Chalk whyt chymnees þer ches he in-noze,  
Vpon bastel rouez, þat blenked ful quyte;  
800 So mony pynakle payntet wat3 poudred ay quere,  
Among þe castel carnekez, clambred so pik,  
þat pared out of papure purely hit semed.  
þe fre freke on þe sole hit fayr in-n[o]ghe þo3t,  
804 If he my3t keuer to com þe cloyster wyth-inne,  
To herber in þat hostel, whyl halyday lested  
auinant;  
He calde, & sone þer com  
808 A porter pure plesauant,  
On þe wal his ernd he nome,  
& haylsed þe kny3t erraunt.

## XIV.

"Good sir," says  
Gawayne, "ask  
the high lord of  
this house to  
grant me a lodg-  
ing." [Fol. 102.]

"You are wel-  
come to dwell  
here as long as  
you like," replied  
the porter.

The draw-bridge  
is let down,

and the gate is  
opened wide to  
receive him.

His horse is well  
stabled.  
Knights and  
squires bring Ga-  
wayne into the  
hall.  
Many a one has-  
tens to take his

- "Gode sir," quod Gawan, "woldez þou go mynernde,  
812 To þe he3 lorde of þis hous, herber to craue!"  
"3e, Peter," quod þe porter, "& purely I trowe,<sup>1</sup>  
þat 3e be, wy3e, welcum to won quyle yow lykez."  
þen zede þat wy3e azayn swyþe,  
816 & folke frely hym wyth, to fonge þe kny3t;  
þay let down þe grete dra3t, & derely out zeden,  
& kneled down on her kne3 vpon þe colde erþe,  
To welcum þis ilk wy3, as worþy hom þo3t;  
820 þay zolden hym þe brode zate, zarked vp wyde,  
& he hem raysed rekenly, & rod ouer þe brygge;  
Sere seggez hym sesed by sadel, quel<sup>2</sup> he ly3t,  
& syþen stabeled his stede stif men in-noze.  
824 Kny3tez & swyerez comen down þenne,  
For to bryng þis burne<sup>3</sup> wyth blys in-to halle;  
Quen he hef vp his helme, þer hized in-noghe

<sup>1</sup> trowoe, MS.    <sup>2</sup> quyle (?) or quen (?).    <sup>3</sup> buurne, MS.

- For to hent hit at his honde, þe hende to seruen, helmet and sword.
- 828 His bronde & his blasoun þo þay token.  
 þen haylsed he ful hendly þo haþeleȝ vch one,  
 & mony proud mon þer presed, þat prynce to honour;  
 Alle hasped in his heȝ wedeto halle þay hym wonnen,
- 832 þer fayre fyre vpon flet fersly brenned.  
 þenne þe lorde of þe lede louteȝ fro his chambre, The lord of the country bids him welcome,  
 For to mete wyth menske þe mon on þe flor;  
 He sayde, "ȝe ar welcum to welde as yow lykeȝ,
- 836 þat here is, al is yowre awen, to haue at yowre wyll  
 & welde."  
 "Graunt mercy," *quod* Gawayn,  
 "þer Kryst hit yow for-ȝelde,"
- 840 As frekeȝ þat semed fayn, and they embrace each other.  
 Ayþer oþer in armeȝ couz felde.

## XV.

- Gawayn glyzt on þe gome þat godly hym gret,  
 & þuȝt hit a bolde burne þat þe burȝ aȝte,
- 844 A hoge hapel for þe noneȝ, & of hyghe elde;<sup>1</sup>  
 Brode bryȝt watȝ his berde, & al beuer hwed, Beaver-hued was his broad beard,  
 Sturne stif on þe stryȝþe on stal-worth schonkeȝ,  
 Felle face as þe fyre, & fre of hys speche;  
 848 & wel hym semed for soþe, as þe segge þuȝt,  
 To lede a lortschyp in lee of leudeȝ ful gode.  
 þe lorde hym charred to a chambre, & chefly<sup>2</sup> [Fol. 102b.]  
The lord leads Gawayne to a chamber, and assigns him a page to wait upon him.  
 cumaundeȝ  
 To delyuer hym a leude, hym loȝly to serue;
- 852 & þere were boun at his bode burneȝ in-noȝe, [noble,  
 þat broȝt hym to a bryȝt boure, þer beddyng watȝ  
 Of cortynes of clene sylk, wyth cler golde hemmeȝ,  
 & couertoreȝ ful curious, with comlych paneȝ,  
 856 Of bryȝt blaunnier a-boue enbrawd bisydeȝ,  
 Rudeleȝ remnande on ropeȝ, red golde ryngȝȝ,  
 Tapyteȝ tyȝt to þe woȝe, of tuly & tars, Tarsis tapestries covered the walls and the floor.
- <sup>1</sup> eldee, MS.      <sup>2</sup> clesly, MS.





- Double felde, as hit falleȝ, & fele kyn fischeȝ ;  
 Summe baken in bred, summe brad on þe gledeȝ,  
 892 Summe soþen, summe in sewe, sauereȝ with spyces,  
 & ay sawes<sup>1</sup> so sleȝeȝ, þat þe segge lyked.  
 þe freke calde hit a fest ful frely & ofte, [at oneȝ  
 Ful hendely, quen alle þe hapeles re-hayted hym  
 896 as hende ;  
 " þis penaunce now ȝe take,  
 & eft hit schal amende ;"  
 þat mon much merȝe con make,  
 900 For wyȝ in his hed þat wende.
- with fish baked  
and broiled,  
or boiled and sea-  
soned with spices.*
- He calls it a full  
noble feast,*
- and much mirth  
he makes, for the  
wine is in his  
head.*

## XVII.

- þenne watȝ spyed & spured vpon spare wyse,  
 Bi preue poynteȝ of þat pryȝce, put to hym-seluen,  
 þat he be-knew cortaysly of þe court þat he were,  
 904 þat apel Arthure þe hende haldeȝ hym one,  
 þat is þe ryche ryal kyȝȝ of þe rounde table ;  
 & hit watȝ Wawen hym-self þat in þat won sytteȝ,  
 Comen to þat krystmasse, as case hym þen lympeȝ.  
 908 When þe lorde hade lerneȝ þat he þe leude hade,  
 Loude laȝed he þerat, so lef hit hym þoȝt,  
 & alle þe men in þat mote maden much joye,  
 To apere in his presense prestly þat tyme,  
 912 þat alle prys, & prowes, & pured þewes  
 Apendes to hys persoun, & prayseȝ is euer,  
 By-fore alle men vpon molde, his mensk is þe most.  
 Vch segge ful softly sayde to his fere,  
 916 " Now schal we semlych se sleȝeȝ of þeweȝ,  
 & þe teccheles termes of talkyȝȝ noble,  
 Wich speȝde is in speche, vnsþurd may we lerne,  
 Syn we haf fongeȝ þat fyne fader of nurture ;  
 920 God hatȝ geuen vs his grace godly for soþe,  
 þat such a gest as Gawan graunteȝ vs to haue,
- Sir Gawayne, in  
answer to ques-  
tions put to him,*
- tells the prince  
that he is of  
Arthur's court.*
- When this was  
made known,*
- great was the joy  
in the hall.*
- Each one said  
softly to his mate,  
" Now we shall  
see courteous  
manners and hear  
noble speech,*
- for we have  
amongst us the  
' father of nur-  
ture.'*

<sup>1</sup> sewes (?).

Wien luttel herte of his burgh schal siken  
& syng.

1514 In mynyng of mynynges more,  
The luttel now schal we lerne,  
I myne þat myn herte  
Schal siken of luf-talking.

The luttel

The luttel now schal we lerne  
of luf-talking.

# XXIII

after dinner the  
company go to  
the Dance.  
1515 He þat þe dinner was done, & þe dore up,  
His wite was at þe mynne nedre þe tyme;  
Charynges - in þe charynges charynges þe gite,  
Luttel in charynges. 1516 To þe luttel charynges of þe luttel tyme  
þe luttel luttel þe luttel & þe luttel alle,  
In a charynges charynges he charynges;  
Gewal ghydes in þe gite, & gite þe luttel some;  
1517 þe luttel luttel herte of þe luttel & luttel herte tosyte,  
& charynges herte knowes, & charynges herte his name,  
& charynges he was þe wite charynges wyte of þe worlde;  
& he herte þe luttel herte, & charynges herte oþer,  
1518 & charynges charynges herte þe charynges-kyte;  
þe luttel herte þe luttel to lute on þe luttel  
þe luttel herte ho of his charynges, with many cler burde,  
Ho was þe fayrest in felle of flesche & of lyre,  
1519 & of compas, & odour, & costes of alle oþer,  
& wene þe Wene, as þe wyte þe luttel  
He charynges þe charynges, to charynges þe luttel;  
An oþer luttel hir had bi þe luttel bonde,  
1520 þat wat; alder þe ho, an anscian hit semed,  
& herte honowred with harte; aboute.  
Bot vn-lyke on to lute þe luttel were,  
For if þe þe luttel wat; þe luttel wat; þat oþer;  
1521 Riche red on þat on rayled ay quere,  
Rugh ronkled cheke; þat oþer on rolled;  
Kerchofes of þat on wyth mony cler perle;  
Hir brest & hir bryzt þe luttel bare displayed,

The luttel of the  
castle and the  
charynges at  
charynges during  
charynges.

The luttel charynges  
herte by his  
luttel, herte his  
luttel.

The luttel charynges  
herte herte than  
charynges.

An oþer luttel 'an  
luttel and the  
luttel, herte his  
by the luttel.

Very luttel were  
luttel luttel,  
If the young one  
was luttel the luttel  
was luttel.

and had rough  
and wretched  
charynges.

The luttel had  
luttel and luttel

- 956 Schon schyrer þen snawe, þat scheder<sup>1</sup> on hilleȝ ;      "bare displayed."
- þat oper wyth a gorgor watȝ gered ouer þe swyre,  
 Chymbled ouer hir blake chyn with mylk-quyte  
 Hirfrountfolden in sylk, enfoubled ay quere, [vayles,      The ancient one  
 exposed only her  
 "black brows,"  
 her two eyes,  
 960 Toret & treieted with tryfleȝ aboute,  
 þat noȝt watȝ bare of þat burde bot þe blake broȝes,      [Fol. 104.]  
 nose, and naked  
 lips, all sour and  
 bleared.  
 þe tweyne yȝon, & þe nase, þe naked lyppeȝ,  
 & þose were soure to se, & sellyly blered ;  
 964 A mensk lady on molde mon may hir calle,  
 for gode ;  
 Hir body watȝ schort & pik,      Her body was  
 short and thick ;  
 Hir buttokeȝ bay & brode,      her buttocks  
 broad and round.  
 968 More lykker-wys on to lyk,  
 Watȝ þat scho hade on lode.

## XIX.

- When Gawayn glyȝt on þat gay, þat graciously      With permission  
 loked,  
 Wyth leue laȝt of þe lorde he went hem aȝaynes ;  
 972 þe alder he haylȝes, heldande ful lowe,      Sir Gawayne sa-  
 lutes the elder,  
 þe loueloker he lappeȝ a lyttel in armeȝ,  
 He kysses hir comlyly, & knyȝtly he meleȝ ;      but the younger  
 he kisses,  
 þay kallen hym of a quoyntaunce, & he hit quyk  
 976 To be her seruauȝt sothly, if hem-self lyked. [askeȝ      and begs to be  
 her servant.  
 þaytan hym bytwene hem, wyth talkyng hym leden  
 To chambre, to chemné, & chefly þay asken  
 Spyceȝ, þat vn-sparely men speded hom to bryng,  
 980 & þe wynne-lych wyne þer-with vche tyme.      To chamber all  
 go,  
 where spices and  
 wine are served.  
 þe lorde luflych aloft lepeȝ ful ofte,  
 Mynned merthe to be made vpon mony syȝeȝ.  
 Hent heȝly of his hode, & on a spere hanged,  
 984 & wayned hom to wynne þe worship þer-of,  
 þat most myrþe myȝt mene<sup>2</sup> þat crystenmas whyle ;  
 " & I schalfonde, bi my fayth, to fylter wyth þe best,  
 Er me wont þe wedeȝ, with help of my frendeȝ."

<sup>1</sup> schedes (?).<sup>2</sup> meue (?).

Night approach-  
es, and then

988 þus wyth lazande loteþ þe lorde hit tayt<sup>1</sup> makeþ,  
For to glade sir Gawayn with gomnez in halle

þat nyȝt ;

Til þat hit watȝ tyme,

992

þe kyng comaundet lyȝt,

Sir Gawen his leue con nyme,

& to his bed hym diȝt.

Sir Gawayne  
takes his leave  
and retires to  
rest.

## XX.

On Christmas  
morn,  
joy reigns in  
every dwelling in  
the world.

So did it in the  
castle where our  
knight abode.  
[Fol. 104b.]

The lord and "the  
old ancient wife"  
sit together.

Gawayne sits by  
the wife of his  
host.

It were too tedi-  
ous to tell of the  
meat, the mirth,  
and the joy that  
abounded every-  
where.

Gawayne and his  
beautiful com-  
panion derive  
much comfort  
from each other's  
conversation.

Trumpets and  
nakers give forth  
their sounds.

- On þe morne, as vch mon mynez þat tyme,  
996 [þ]at dryȝtyn for oure destyné to deȝe watȝ borne,  
Wele waxeȝ in vche a won in worlde, for his sake ;  
So did hit þere on þat day, þurȝ dayntes monȝ ;  
Boþe at mes & at mele, messes ful quaynt  
1000 Derf men vpon dece drest of þe best.  
þe olde auncian wyf heȝest ho sytteȝ ;  
þe lorde luffy her by lent, as I trowe ;  
Gawan & þe gay burde to-geder þay seten,  
1004 Euen in-myddes, as þe messe metely come ;  
& syþen þurȝ al þe sale, as hem best semed,  
Bi vche grome at his degre grayþely watȝ serued.  
þer watȝ mete, þer watȝ myrþe, þer watȝ much ioye,  
1008 þat for to telle þerof hit me tene were,  
& to poynte hit ȝet I pyned me parauenture ;  
Bot ȝet I wot þat Wawen & þe wale burde  
Such comfort of her compaynye caȝten to-geder,  
1012 þurȝ her dere dalyaunce of her derne wordeȝ,  
Wyth clene cortays carp, closed fro fylþe ;  
& hor play watȝ passande vche prynce gomen,  
in vayres ;  
1016 Trumpeȝ & nakerys,  
Much pypyng þer repayres,  
Vche mon tented hys,  
& þay two tented þayres.

<sup>1</sup> layt (?).

## XXI.

- 1020 Much dut watȝ þer dryuen þat day & þat oper,  
 & þe pryð as þro þronge in þerafter ;  
 þe ioye of sayn Ioneȝ day watȝ gentyle to here,  
 & watȝ þe last of þe layk, leudeȝ þer þoȝten.
- 1024 þer wer gestes to go vpon þe gray morne,  
 For-þy wonderly þay woke, & þe wyn dronken,  
 Daunȝed ful dreȝly wyth dere caroleȝ ;  
 At þe last, when hit watȝ late, þay lachen her leue,
- 1028 Vchon to wende on his way, þat watȝ wyȝe stronge.  
 Gawan gef hym god-day, þe god mon hym lachcheȝ,  
 Ledeshym to his awen chambre, þ[e] chymné bysyde,  
 & þere he draȝeȝ hym on-dryȝe, & derely hym þonk-
- 1032 Of þe wynne worship & ! he hym wayned hade, [keȝ,  
 As to honour his hous on þat hyȝe tyde,  
 & enbelyse his burȝ with his bele chere.  
 " I-wysse sir, quyl I leue, me worþeȝ þe better,
- 1036 þat Gawayn hatȝ ben mygest, at Goddeȝ awen fest." [Fol. 105.]  
 " Grant merci<sup>2</sup> sir," quod Gawayn, " in god fayth  
 hit is yowreȝ,  
 Al þe honour is your awen, þe heȝe kyng yow zelde ;  
 & I am wyȝe at your wyll, to worch youre hest,
- 1040 As I am halden þer-to, in hyȝe & in loȝe,  
 bi riȝt."  
 þe lorde fast can hym payne,  
 To holde lenger þe knyȝt,
- 1044 To hym answeȝ Gawayn,  
 Bi non way þat he myȝt.

Great was the joy  
for three days.

St. John's-day  
was the last of the  
Christmas festi-  
val.

On the morrow  
many of the  
guests took their  
departure from  
the castle.

Sir Gawayne is  
thanked by his  
host for the hon-  
our and pleasure  
of his visit.

He endeavours to  
keep the knight  
at his court.

## XXII.

- Then frayned þe freke ful fayre at him-seluen,  
 Quatderne<sup>3</sup> dede had hym dryuen, at þat dere tyme,
- 1048 So kenly fro þe kyngȝ kourt to kayre al his one,  
 Er þe halidayȝ holly were halet out of toun ?

He desires to  
know what had  
driven Sir Ga-  
wayne from Ar-  
thur's court be-  
fore the end of  
the Christmas  
holidays.

<sup>1</sup> þat (?).

<sup>2</sup> merci, in MS.

<sup>3</sup> derue (?).

The knight replies that "a high errand and a hasty one" had forced him to leave the court.

"For soþe sir," *quod þe segge*, "ʒe sayn bot þe trawþe

A heʒe ernde & a hasty me hade fro þo woneʒ,

1052 For I am sumned my selfe to sech to a place,  
I wot<sup>1</sup> in worlde wheder warde to wende, hit to fynde;  
I nolde, bot if I hit negh myʒt on nwʒeres morne,  
For alle þe londe in-wyth Logres, so me oure lorde

He asks his host whether he has ever heard of the Green Chapel,

1056 For-þy, *sir*, þis enquest I require yow here, [help !  
þat ʒe me telle with trawþe, if euer ʒe tale herde  
Of þe grene chapel, quere hit on grounde stondeʒ,  
& of þe knyʒt þat hit kepes, of colour of grene ?

for he has to be there on New Year's-day.

1060 þer watʒ stabled bi statut a steuen *vus* by-twene,  
To mete þat mon at þat mere, ʒif I myʒt last ;  
& of þat ilk nwʒere bot naked now wonteʒ,  
& I wolde loke on þat lede, if God me let wolde,

He would as lief die as fail in his errand.

1064 Gladloker, bi Goddeʒ sun, þen any god welde !  
For-þi, I-wysse, bi ʒowre wyлле, wende me bi-houes,  
Naf I now to busy bot bare þre dayeʒ,  
& me als fayn to falle feye as fayly of myyn ernde."

The prince tells Sir Gawayne that he will teach him the way.

1068 þennelazande *quod* þe lorde, "now leng þe by-houes,  
For I schal teche yow to þa[t] terme bi þe tymeʒ ende,  
þe grene chapayle vpon grounde, greue yow no more ;  
Bot ʒe schal be in yowre bed, burne, at þyn ese,

[Fol. 105b.]

1072 Quyle forth dayeʒ, & ferk on þe fyrst of þe ʒere,  
& cum to þat merk at mydmorn, to make quat  
in spenne ; [yow likeʒ

The Green Chapel is not more than two miles from the castle.

1076 Dowelleʒ whyle new ʒeres daye,  
& rys, & raykeʒ þenne,  
Mon schal yow sette in waye,  
Hit is not two myle henne."

### XXIII.

Then was Gawayne glad,

and consents to tarry awhile at the castle.

þenne watʒ Gawan ful glad, & gomenly he laʒed,—  
1080 "Now I þonk yow þryuandely þurʒ alle oþer þynge,  
Now acheued is my chaunce, I schal at your wyлле  
Dowelle, & elleʒ do quat ʒe demen."

<sup>1</sup> not (?).

- penne sesed hym þe syre, & set hym bysyde,  
 1084 Let þe ladies be fette, to lyke hem þe better ;  
 þer watȝ seme solace by hem-self stille ;  
 þe lorde let for luf loteȝ so myry,  
 As wyȝ þat wolde of his wyte, newyst quat he myȝt.  
 1088 þenne he carped to þe knyȝt, criande loude,  
 "ȝe han demed to do þe dede þat I bidde ;  
 Wyl ȝe halde þis hes here at þys oneȝ ?"  
 "ȝe sir, for-soþe," sayd þe segge trwe,  
 1092 "Whyl I hyde in yowre borȝe, be bayn to ȝow[r]e  
 hest."  
 "For ȝe haf trauayled," quod þe tulk, "towen fro  
 ferre,  
 & syþen waked me wyth, ȝe arn not wel waryst,  
 Nauper of sostnaunce ne of slepe, soþly I knowe ;  
 1096 ȝe schal lenge in your lofte, & lyȝe in your ese,  
 To morn quyle þe messe-quyle, & to mete wende,  
 Whenȝe wyl, wyth my wyf, þat wyth yow schalsitte,  
 & comfort yow with compayny, til I to cort torne,  
 1100 ȝe lende ;  
 & I schal erly ryse,  
 On huntynȝ wyl I wende."  
 Gauayn granteȝ alle þyse,  
 1104 Hym heldande, as þe hende.

The ladies are  
brought in to  
solace him.

The lord of the  
castle asks the  
knight to grant  
him one request ;

That he will stay  
in his chamber  
during mass  
time,

and then go to  
meat with his  
hostess.

Gawayne accedes  
to his request.

## XXIV.

- "ȝet firre," quod þe freke, "a forwarde we make ;  
 Quat-so-euer I wyne in þe wod, hit worpeȝ to youreȝ,  
 & quat chek so ȝe acheue, chaunge me þer-forne ;  
 1108 Swete, swap we so, sware with trawþe,  
 Queþer, leude, so lymþ lere oper better."  
 "Bi God," quod Gawayn þegode, "I grant þer-tylle,  
 & þat yow lyst forto layke, lef hit me þynkes.  
 1112 "Who bryngeȝ vs þis beuerage, þis bargayn is  
 maked :"  
 So sayde þe lorde of þat lede ; þay laȝed vchone,

"Whatsoever,"  
says the host, "I  
win in the wood  
shall be yours,  
and what check  
you achieve shall  
be mine."

[Fol. 106.]

A bargain is made  
between them.



- þay dronken, & daylyeden, & dalten vntyztel,<sup>1</sup>  
 þise lordez & ladyez, quyle þat hem lyked ;  
 1116 & syþen with frenkysch fare & fele fayre lotez  
 þay stoden, & stemed, & styilly speken,  
 Kysten ful comlyly, & kazten her leue.  
 Night approaches  
 and each "to his  
 bed was brought  
 at the last."  
 1120 Vche burne to his bed watȝ broȝt at þe laste,  
 ful softe ;  
 To bed ȝet er þay ȝede,  
 Recorded couenaunteȝ ofte ;  
 1124 þe olde lorde of þat leude,<sup>2</sup>  
 Cowþe wel halde layk a-lofte.

## [FYTTE THE THIRD.]

## I.

Before day-break  
 folks uprise,

saddle their  
 horses, and truss  
 their mails.

Each goes where  
 it pleases him  
 best.  
 The noble lord  
 of the land ar-  
 rays himself for  
 riding.  
 He eats a sop  
 hastily and goes  
 to mass.

Before day-light  
 he and his men  
 are on their  
 horses.

Then the hounds  
 are called out and  
 coupled.


Three short notes  
 are blown by the  
 bugles.

- Ful erly bifore þe day þe folk vp-rysen,  
 Gestes þat go wolde, hor gromeȝ þay calden,  
 1128 & þay busken vp bilyue, blonkkeȝ to sadel,  
 Tyffen he[r] takles, trussen her males,  
 Richen hem þe rychest, to ryde alle arayde,  
 Lepen vp lyztly, lachen her brydeles,  
 1132 Vche wyȝe on his way, þer hym wel lyked.  
 þe leue lorde of þe londe watȝ not þe last,  
 A-rayed for þe rydyng, with renkkeȝ ful mony ;  
 Ete a sop hastily, when he hade herde masse,  
 1136 With bugle to bent felde he buskeȝ by-lyue ;  
 By þat þat any day-lyzt lemed vpon erþe,  
 He with his hapeles on hyȝe horsseȝ weren.  
 þeune þise cacheres þat coupe, cowpled hor  
 houndez,  
 1140 Vnclosed þe kenel dore, & calde hem þer-oute,  
 Blwe bygly in bugleȝ þre bare mote ;  
 Braches bayed þerfore, & bremente noyse maked,

<sup>1</sup> vntyl nyȝte (?).<sup>2</sup> lede (?).

& pay chastysed, & charred, on chasyng pat went ;  
 1144 A hundreth of hunteres, as I haf herde telle,  
 of þe best ;  
 To trystors vewters 3od,  
 Couples huntres of kest,  
 1148 þer ros for blasteȝ gode,  
 Gret rurd in þat forest.

A hundred hunters join in the chase.  
 To the stations the "fawters" go,  
 [Fol. 106b.]  
 and the dogs are



## II.

At þe fyrst quethe of þe quest quaked þe wyld; Roused by the clamour the deer  
rush to the heights,  
Der drof in þe dale, doted for drede,  
1152 Hized to þe hyze, hot heterly þay were  
Restayed with þe stablye, þat stoutly ascryed; but are soon  
driven back.  
þay let þe herttez haf þe gate, with þe hyze hedes, The harts and  
bucks are allowed  
to pass,  
þe breme bukkez also, with hor brode paumez;  
1156 For þe fre lorde hade de-fende in fermysoun tyme,  
þat þer schulde no mon mene<sup>1</sup> to þe male dere.  
þe hindez were halden in, with hay & war,  
þe does dryuen with gret dyn to þe depe sladez;  
1160 þer myzt mon se, as þay slypte, slentyng of arwes,  
At vche [þat] wende vnder wande wapped a flone, As they fly they  
are shot by the  
bowmen.  
þat bigly bote on þe broun, with ful brode hede3,  
What! þay brayen, & bleden, bi bonkkez þay de3en. The hounds and  
the hunters, with  
a loud cry, follow  
in pursuit.  
1164 & ay rachches in a res radly hem folzes,  
Hunterez wyth hyze horne hasted hem after,  
Wyth such a crakkande kry, as klyffes haden brusten;  
What wyld so at-waped wyzes þat schotten, Those that  
escaped the arrows  
are killed by the  
hounds.  
1168 Wat3 al to-raced & rent, at þe resayt.  
Bi þay were tened at þe hyze, & taysed to þe wattrez,  
þe ledez were so lerned at þe loze trysteres,  
& þe gre-houndez so grete, þat geten hem bylyue,  
1172 & hem to fylched, as fast as frekez myzt loke,  
þer ryzt.  
þe lorde for blys abloy  
Ful oft con launce & lyzt,

<sup>1</sup> *meue* (?).

which lasted till the approach of night. 1176 & drof þat day wyth Ioy.  
Thus to þe derk nyȝt.

## III.

All this time Gawayne lies a-bed,		þus laykeȝ þis lorde by lynde wodeȝ eueȝ, & G. þe god mon, in gay bed lygeȝ,
under "coverture full clear."	1180	Lurkkeȝ quyl þe day-lyȝt lemed on þe wowes, Vnder couertour ful clere, cortyned aboute ; & as in slomeryng he slode, sleȝly he herde A littel dyn at his dor, & derfly vpon ;
He hears a noise at his door.	1184	& he heueȝ vp his hed out of þe cloþes, A corner of þe cortyn hē caȝt vp a lyttel, & wayteȝ warly þider-warde, quat hit be myȝt. Hit watȝ þe ladi, loflyest to be-holde,
[Fol. 107.]		
A lady, the loveliest to behold, enters softly.	1188	þat droȝ þe dor after hir ful dernly <sup>1</sup> & styлле, & boȝed to-warde þe bed ; & þe burne schamed, & layde hym doun lystly, & let as he slepte. & ho stepped stilly, & stel to his bedde,
She approaches the bed.		
Gawayne pretends to be asleep. The lady casts up the curtain and sits on the bed-side.	1192	Kest vp þe cortyn, & creped with-inne, & set hir ful softly on þe bed-syde, & lenged þere selly longe, to loke quen he wakened. þe lede lay lurked a ful longe quyle,
Gawayne has much wonder thereat.	1196	Compast in his concience to quat þat cace myȝt Mene oþer amount, to meruayle hym þoȝt ; Bot ȝet hesayde in hym-self, "more semly hit were To aspyewyȝh my spelle [in] space quat ho wolde."
He rouses himself up, unlocks his eyes, and looks as if he were astonished.	1200	þen he wakenede, & wroth, & to hir warde torned, & vn-louked his yȝe-lyddeȝ, & let as hym wondered, & sayned hym, as bi his saȝe þe sauer to worthe, with hande ;
	1204	Wyȝh chynne & cheke ful swete, Boȝe quit & red in-blande, Ful luffy con ho lete, Wyȝh lyppeȝ smal laȝande.

<sup>1</sup> deruly (?).

## IV.

- 1208 "God moroun, *sir* Gawayn," sayde þat fayr lady,  
 "Ȝe ar a sleper vn-slyȝe, þat mon may slyde hider ;  
 Now ar ȝe tan astyt, bot true *vus* may schape,  
 I schal bynde yow in your bedde, þat be ȝe trayst :"  
 1212 Al lazande þe lady lanced þo bourdez.  
 "Goud moroun g[aye],"<sup>1</sup> *quod* Gawayn þe blype,  
 "Me schal worpe at your wille, & þat me wel lykeȝ,  
 For I ȝelde me ȝederly, & ȝeȝe after grace,  
 1216 & þat is þe best, be mydome, forme by-houȝe nede ;"  
 & þus he bourded a-ȝayn with mony a blype laȝter.  
 "Bot wolde ȝe, lady louely, þen leue me grante,  
 & de-prece your prysoun, & pray hym to ryse,  
 1220 I wolde boȝe of þis bed, & busk me better,  
 I schulde keuer þe more comfort to karp yow wyth."  
 "Nay, for soþe, beau *sir*," sayd þat swete,  
 "Ȝe schal not rise of your bedde, I rych yow better,  
 1224 I schal happe yow here þat oper half als,  
 & syþen karp wyth my knyȝt þat I kaȝt haue ;  
 For I wene wel, Iwysse, *sir* Wawen ȝe are,  
 þat alle þe worlde worchipeȝ, quere-so ȝe ride ;  
 1228 Your honour, your hendelayk is hendely praysed  
 With lordez, wyth ladyes, with alle þat lyf bere.  
 & now ȝe ar here, iwysse, & we bot oure one ;  
 My lorde & his ledez ar on lenȝe faren,  
 1232 Oper burneȝ in her bedde, & my burdez als,  
 þe dor drawen, & dit with a derf haspe ;  
 & syþen I haue in þis hous hym þat al lykeȝ,  
 I schal ware my whyle wel, quyl hit lasteȝ,  
 1236 with tale ;  
 Ȝe ar welcum to my cors,  
 Yowre awen won to wale,  
 Me be-houȝe of fyne force,  
 1240 Your seruauȝt be & schale."

"Good morrow,"  
says the lady, "ye  
are a careless  
sleeper to let one  
enter thus."

I shall bind you  
in your bed, of  
that be ye sure."

"Good morrow,"  
says the knight,  
"I am well  
pleased to be at  
your service ;"

but permit me to  
rise and dress  
myself."

[Fol. 107b.]  
"Nay, beau *sir*,"  
said that sweet  
one,

"I shall hold  
talk with you  
here."

I know well that  
you are Gawayne  
that all the world  
worships.

We are by our-  
selves ;

My lord and his  
men are far off.  
Other men are in  
their beds, so are  
my maidens.  
The door is safely  
closed.  
Since I have him  
in house that  
every one likes, I  
shall use my time  
well while it lasts.

Ye are welcome  
to my body.

I shall be your  
servant."

<sup>1</sup> This word is illegible in the MS.

## V.

"I am unworthy,"  
says Sir Gawayne,  
"to reach to such  
reverence as ye  
rehearse."

I shall be glad,  
however,  
to please you by  
word or service."

"There are la-  
dies," says his  
visitor, "who  
would prefer thy  
company"

to much of the  
gold that they  
possess."

[Fol. 106.] 1260

The knight an-  
swers the lady's  
questions.

"In god fayth," *quod* Gawayn, "gayn hit me þynk-  
þaȝ I be not now he þat ȝe of speken ; [keȝ,  
To reche to such reuerence as ȝe reherce here

1244 I am wyȝe vn-worþy, I wot wel my-seluen ;  
Bi God, I were glad, & yow god þoȝt,  
At saȝe oþer at seruyce þat I sette myȝt  
To þe plesaunce of your prys, hit were a pure ioye."

1248 "In god fayth, sir Gawayn," *quod* þe gay lady,  
"þe prys & þe prowes þat plesez al oþer,  
If I hit lakked, oþer set at lyȝt, hit were littel daynté ;  
Bot hit ar ladyes in-noȝe, þat leuer wer nowþe

1252 Haf þe hende in hor holde, as I þe habbe here,  
To daly with derely your daynté wordeȝ,  
Keuer hem comfort, & colen her careȝ,  
þen much of þegarysoun oþer golde þat<sup>1</sup> þay hauen ;

1256 Bot I louue<sup>2</sup> þat ilk lorde þat þe lyfte haldeȝ,  
I haf hit holly in my honde þat al desyres,  
þurȝe grace."

Scho made hym so gret chere,  
þat watȝ so fayr of face,  
þe knyȝt with speches skere,  
A[n]swared to vche a cace.

## VI.

Gawayne tells  
her that he pre-  
fers her conversa-  
tion before that  
of all others.

The lady declares  
by Mary,

that were she  
about to choose  
her a lord,

"Madame," *quod* þe myry mon, "Mary yow ȝelde,  
1264 For I haf founden, in god fayth, yowre fraunchis no-  
& oþer ful much of oþer folk fongen hordedeȝ ; [bele,  
Bot þe daynté þat þay delen for my disert nysen,  
Hit is þe worchyp of your-self, þat noȝt bot wel  
conneȝ."

1268 "Bi Mary," *quod* þe menskful, "me þynk hit an oþer ;  
For were I worth al þe wone of wymmen alyue,  
& al þe wele of þe worlde were in my honde,  
& I schulde chepen & chose, to cheue me a lorde,

<sup>1</sup> MS. þat þat.

<sup>2</sup> louie or loune (?).

- 1272 For þe costes þat I haf knowen vpon þe knyȝt here,  
 Of bewté, & debonerté, & blyþe semblaunt,  
 & þat I haf er herkkened, & halde hit here trwee, she would select  
 Gawayne before  
 any man on earth.  
 þer schulde no freke vpon folde bifore yow be  
 chosen."
- 1276 "I-wysse, worþy," quod þe wyȝe, "ȝe haf waled  
 wel better,  
 Bot I am proude of þe prys þat ȝe put on me, Gawayne tells  
 her that he will  
 become her own  
 knight and faith-  
 ful servant.  
 & soberly your seruauȝt my souerayn I holde yow,  
 & yowre knyȝt I be-com, & Kryst yow for-ȝelde."
- 1280 þus þay meled of much-quat, til myd-morn paste,  
 & ay þe lady let lyk, a <sup>1</sup> hym loued mych ;  
 þe freke ferde with defence, & feted ful fayre. The remembrance  
 of his adventure  
 prevents him  
 from thinking of  
 love.  
 þaȝ I were burde bryȝtest, þe burde in mynde hade,
- 1284 þe lasse luf in his lode, for lur þat he soȝt,  
 bouté hone ;  
 þe dunte þat schulde <sup>2</sup> hym deue,  
 & nodeȝ hit most be done ;
- 1288 þe lady þenn spek of leue,  
 He granted hir ful sone. The lady takes  
 leave of Sir Ga-  
 wayne.

## VII.

- þenne ho gef hym god-day, & wyth a glent laȝed,  
 & as ho stod, ho stonyed hym wyth ful storwordeȝ ;
- 1292 "Now he þat spedeȝ vche spech, þis disport ȝelde,  
 Bot þat ȝe be Gawan, hit gotȝ in mynde." [yow!  
 "Quer-fore?" quod þe freke, & freschly he askeȝ,  
 Ferde lest he hade fayled in fourme of his castes ;
- 1296 Bot þe lurde hym blessed, & bi þis skyl sayde,  
 "So god as Gawayn gaynly is halden, [Fol. 108v.]  
 & cortaysye is closed so clene in hym-seluen,  
 Couth not lyȝtly haf lenged so long wyth a lady,
- 1300 Bot he had craued a cosse, bi his courtaysye,  
 Bi sum towch of summe tryfle, at sum taleȝ ende."  
 þen quod Woven, "I-wysse, worþe as yow lykeȝ, Were it he, sure-  
 ly, ere this, he  
 would have craved  
 a kisse."  
 "I shall kisse," says the knight,

<sup>1</sup> and (?).<sup>2</sup> schulde, in MS.

"at your com-  
mandment."

I schal kysse at your comaundement, as a knyȝt  
falleȝ,

1304 & fire<sup>1</sup> lest he displese yow, so<sup>2</sup> plede hit no more."

With that the  
lady catches him  
in her arms and  
kisses him.

Ho comes nerre with þat, & cacheȝ hym in armez,  
Louteȝ luflych adoun, & þe leude kysseȝ;  
þay comly bykennen to Kryst ayȝer oȝer ;

1308 Ho dos hir forth at þe dore, with-uten dyn more.

Gawayne then  
rises and goes to  
masse.

& he ryches hym to ryse, & rapes hym sone,  
Clepes to his chamberlayn, choses his wede,  
Boȝeȝ forth, quen he watȝ boun, blyþely to masse,

1312 & þenne he meued to his mete, þat menaskly hym

He makes mirth  
all day till the  
moon rises,

& made myry al day til þe mone ryssed, [keped,  
with game ;

With<sup>3</sup> neuer freke fayrer fonge,

between the "two  
dames," the older  
and the younger.

1316

Bitwene two so dyngne dame,

þe alder & þe ȝonge,

Much solace set þay same.

### VIII.

Meanwhile the  
lord of the land  
and his men hunt  
in woods and  
heaths.

And ay þe lorde of þe londe is lent on his gamneȝ,

1320 To hunt in holteȝ & heȝe, at hyndeȝ barayne,  
Such a sowme he þer slowe bi þat þe sunne heldet,  
Of dos & of oȝer dere, to deme were wonder.

þenne fersly þay flokked in folk at þe laste,

Quickly of the  
killed a "quarry"  
they make.

1324 & quykly of þe quelled dere a querré þay maked ;

þe best boȝed perto, with burneȝ in-noghe,

Then they set  
about breaking  
the deer.

Gedered þe grattest of gres þat þer were,  
& didden hem derely vndo, as þe dede askeȝ ;

They take away  
the assay or fat,

1328 Serched hem at þe assay, summe þat þer were,

Two fyngeres þay fonde of þe fowlest of alle ;

then they slit the  
slot and remove  
the erber.

Syȝen þay slyt þe slot, sesed þe erber,

They afterwards  
rip the four limbs  
and rend off the  
hide.

Schaued wyth a scharp knyȝ, & þe schyre knitten ;

They next open  
the belly and take  
out the bowels.

1332 Syȝen rytte þay þe foure lymmes, & rent of þe hyde,

þen brek þay þe bale, þe baleȝ out token,

Lystily forlancyng, & bere of þe knot ;

[Fol. 109.]

<sup>1</sup> fere (?).

<sup>2</sup> fo, in MS.

<sup>3</sup> Was (?) Nas (?).

- pay gryped to þe gargulun, & grayþely departed  
 1336 þe wesauzt fro þe wynt-hole, & walt out þe guttez ;  
 þen scher þay out þe schuldere; with her scharp  
 knyue;,  
 Haled hem by a lyttel hole, to haue hole sydes ;  
 Siben britned þay þe brest, & brayden hit in twynne,  
 1340 & eft at þe gargulun bigyne; on þenne,  
 Ryue; hit vp radly, ryzt to þe byzt,  
 Voyde; out þe a-vantere, & verayly þerafter  
 Alle þe ryme; by þe rybbe; radly þay lance ;  
 1344 So ryde þay of by resoun bi þe rygge bone;,  
 Euenden to þe haunche, þat hinged alle samen,  
 & heuen hit vp al hole, & hwen hit of þere,  
 & þat þayneme for þenoumbles, bi nome as I trowe,  
 1348 bi kynde ;  
 Bi þe byzt al of þe þy;es,  
 þe lappe; þay lance bi-hynde,  
 To hewe hit in two þay hy;es,  
 1352 Bi þe bak-bon to vnbynde.

They then separate the weasand from the wind-hole and throw out the guts.

The shoulders are cut out, and the breast divided into halves.

The nuckles are next removed.

By the fork of the thighs,

the flaps are hewn in two by the backbone.

## IX.

- Boþe þe hede & þe hals þay hwen of þenne,  
 & syþen sunder þay þe syde; swyft fro þe chyne,  
 & þe corbeles fee þay kest in a greue ;<sup>1</sup>  
 1356 þenn þurled þay ayþer þik side þur; bi þe rybbe,  
 & hinged þenne a[y]þer bi hozes of þe fourche;,  
 Vche freke for his fee, as falle; forto haue.  
 Vpon a felle of þe fayre best, fede þay þayr houndes,  
 1360 Wyth þe lyuer & þe lyzte; þe leþer of þe paunche;,  
 & bred baped in blod, blende þer amonge; ;  
 Baldely þay blw prys, bayed þayr rachche;,  
 Syþen fonge þay her flesche folden to home,  
 1364 Strakande ful stoutly mony stif mote;.  
 Bi þat þe daylyzt wat; done, þe douthe wat; al  
 wonen

After this the head and neck are cut off, and the sides severed from the chine.

With the liver, lights, and paunches, they feed the hounds.

Then they make for home.

<sup>1</sup> grene (?).



In-to þe comly castel, þer þe knyȝt bideȝ  
ful stille ;

- 1368 Wyth blys & bryȝt fyr bette,  
þe lord is comen þer-tylle,  
When Gawayn wyth hym mette,  
þer watȝ bot wele at wyлле.

Gawayne goes  
out to meet his  
host.

## X.

[Fol. 100b.]  
The lord com-  
mands all his  
household to as-  
semble,

and the venison  
to be brought be-  
fore him.

He calls Ga-  
wayne,

and asks him  
whether he does  
not deserve much  
praise for his suc-  
cess in the chase.

On the knight  
expressing him-  
self satisfied, he  
is told to take the  
whole according  
to a former agree-  
ment between  
them.

Gawayne gives  
the knight a  
woman's love in  
return.

W. has done  
the thing which  
he has given  
such work.

- 1372 Theȝne comaunded þe lorde in þat sale to samen  
alle þe meny,  
Boþe þe ladyes on loghe to lyȝt with her burdes,  
Bi-fore alle þe folk on þe flette, frekeȝ he beddeȝ  
Verayly his venysoun to fech hym byforne ;  
1376 & al godly in gomen Gaway[n] he called,  
Techeȝ hym to þe tayles of ful tait bestes,  
Scheweȝ hym þe schyree greceschorne vpon rybbes.  
“How payeȝ yow þis play ? haf I prys wonnen ?  
1380 Hauē I þryuandely þonk þurȝ my craft serued ?”  
“ȝe I-wysse,” quod þat oper wyȝe, “here is wayth  
fayrest  
þat I seȝ þis seuē ȝere in sesoun of wynter.”  
“& al I gif yow, Gawayn,” quod þe gome þenne,  
1384 “For by a-corde of couenaunt ȝe craue hit as your  
awen.”  
“þis is soth,” quod þe segge, “I say yow þatilke,  
& <sup>1</sup> I haf worthyly þis woneȝ wyth-inne,  
I-wysse with as god wylle hit worþeȝ to ȝoureȝ.”  
1388 He hasppeȝ his fayre hals his armeȝ wyth-inne,  
& kysseȝ hym as comlyȝ as he <sup>2</sup> coupe awyse :  
“Tas yow þere my cheukauuce, I cheued no more,  
I wouche hit saf truly, þaȝ feler hit were.”  
1392 “Hit is god,” quod þe god mon, “grant mercy  
þerfor [wolde  
Hit may be such hit is þe better, & <sup>1</sup> ȝe me breue  
Where ȝe wou þis ilk wou þe wyȝe of her <sup>2</sup> schuen !”  
And = an.      I ha in MS      ‘ your ’

- |             |   |   |
|-------------|---|---|
|             | <p>“þat wat3 not forward,” <i>quod</i> he, “frayst me no<br/> 1396 For3e haftan þat yow tyde3, trawe 3enon oþer [more,<br/> 3e mowe.”</p> | <p>As this does not<br/> enter into the<br/> concerning, he sets<br/> no answer to his<br/> question.</p> |
| <p>1400</p> | <p>þay lazed, &amp; made hem blyþe,<br/> Wyth lote3 þat were to love,<br/> To soper þay 3ede asswyþe,<br/> Wyth dayntes nwe in-nowe.</p>  | <p>They then pro-<br/> ceed to supper,<br/> where were dain-<br/> ties new and<br/> enough.</p>           |

XI.

- And syþen by þe chymnede in chamber þay seten,  
 Wyȝe þe walle wyn weȝed to hem oft,  
 1404 & eft in her bourdyng þay bayþen in þe morn,  
 To fylle þe same forwardeȝ þat þay by-fore maden,  
 þat chaunce so bytydeȝ hor cheuysaunce to chaunge,  
 What nweȝ so þay nome, at naȝt quen þay metten  
 1408 þay acorded of þe couenaunteȝ byfore þe court alle;  
 þe beuerage watȝ broȝt forth in bourde at þat tyme;  
 þenne þay louelych leȝten leue at þe last,  
 Vche burne to his bedde busked bylyue.  
 1412 Bi þat þe coke hade croweȝ<sup>1</sup> & cakled bot þryse,  
 þe lorde watȝ lopen of his bedde, [&] þe leudeȝ vch  
 one,  
 So þat þe mete & þe masse watȝ metely delyuered;  
 þe douthe dressed to þe wod, er any day sprenged,  
 1416 to chace;  
 Heȝ with hunte & horneȝ,  
 þurȝ playneȝ þay passe in space,  
 Vn-coupled among þo þorneȝ,  
 1420 Racheȝ þat ran on race.
- By the hearth  
 they sit.  
 Wine is carried  
 round.  
 Again Sir Ga-  
 wayne and his  
 host renew their  
 agreement.  
 [Fol. 110.]  
 Then they take  
 leave of each  
 other and hasten  
 to bed.  
 Scarce had the  
 cock cackled  
 thrice when the  
 lord was up.  
 With his hunters  
 and horns they  
 pursue the chase.

XII.

- Sone þay calle of a quest in aker syde, [mynged], The hunters cheer  
 þe hunt re-hayted þe houndez, þat hit fyrst on the hounds,  
 Wyldre wordez hym warp wyth a wrast noyce :-  
 1424 þe howndez þat hit herde, hastid pider swyþe, which fall to the  
 scent forty at  
 once.

<sup>1</sup> crowded (?).

- & fellen as fast to þe fuyt, fourty at ones ;  
 þenne such a glauerande glam of gedered rachcheȝ  
 Ros, þat þe rochereȝ rungen aboute ;
- 1428 Huntetȝ hem hardened *with* horne & wyth muthe.  
 þen al in a semblé sweyed to-geder,  
 Bitwene a flosche in þat fryth, & a foo cragge ;  
 In a knot, bi a clyffe, at þe kerre syde,
- 1432 þer as þe rogh rocher vn-rydely watȝ fallen,  
 [þay] ferden to þe fyndyng, & frekeȝ hem after ;  
 þay vmbe-kesten þe knarre & þe knot boþe,  
 Wyȝeȝ, whyl þay wysten wel wyt inne hem hit were,
- 1436 þe best þat þer breued watȝ wyth þe blod houndeȝ.  
 þenne þay beten on þe buskeȝ, & bede hym vp ryse,  
 & he vnsoundyly out soȝt seggeȝ ouer-þwert,  
 On þe sellokest swyn swenged out þere,
- 1440 Long sythen for<sup>1</sup> þe sounder þat wȝt for-olde,  
 For he watȝ b[este &] bor alper grattest,  
 [And eue]re quen he gronyed, þenne greued mony,  
 For [þre a]t þe fyrst þrast he pryȝt to þe erþe,
- 1444 & [sped hym] forth good sped, boutte spyt more,  
 [Ande þay] halowed hyghe ful hyȝe & hay ! hay !  
 Haden horneȝ to mouþe heterly rechated ; [cryed,  
 Mony watȝ þe myry mouthe of men & of houndeȝ,
- 1448 þat buskkeȝ after þis bor, with bost & wyth noyse,  
 To quelle ;  
 Ful oft he bydeȝ þe baye,  
 & maymeȝ þe mute Izn-melle,
- 1452 He hurteȝ of þe houndeȝ, & þay  
 Ful ȝomerly ȝaule & ȝelle.

## XIII.

The bowmen  
 send their arrows  
 after this wild  
 swine,

- Schalkeȝ to schote at hym schowen to þenne,  
 Haled to hym of her areweȝ, hitten hym oft ;
- 1456 Bot þe poynteȝ payred at þe pyth þat pyȝt in his schel-  
 & þe barbeȝ of his browe bite non wolde, [deȝ,

<sup>1</sup> fro (f).

- þaȝ þe schauen schaft schyndered in peceȝ,  
 þe hede hypped aȝayn, were-so-euer hit hitte ;
- 1460 Bot quen þe dynteȝ hym dered of her dryȝe strokeȝ,  
 þen, brayn-wod for bate, on burneȝ he raseȝ,  
 Hurteȝ hem ful heterly þer he forth hyȝeȝ,  
 & mony arȝed þerat, & on-lyte droȝen.
- 1464 Bot þe lorde on a lyȝt horce launces hym after,  
 As burne bolde vpon bent his bugle he bloweȝ,  
 He rechated, & r[ode]<sup>1</sup> þurȝ roneȝ ful þyk,  
 Suande þis wy[ld]e swyn til þe sunne schafted.
- 1468 þis day wyth þis ilk dede þay dryuen on þis wyse,  
 Whyle oure luflyoh lede lys in his bedde,  
 Gawayn graypely at home, in gereȝ ful ryche  
 of hewe ;
- 1472 þe lady noȝt forȝate,  
 Com to hym to salue,  
 Ful erly ho watȝ hym ato,  
 His mode forto remwe.

but they glide off  
 shivered in  
 pieces.

Enraged with the  
 blows,

he attacks the  
 hunters.

The lord of the  
 land blows his  
 bugle,

and pursues the  
 boar.

All this time Ga-  
 wayne lies a-bed.

## XIV.

- 1476 Ho commes to þe cortyn, & at þe knyȝt totes,  
 Sir Wawen her welcumed worþy on fyrst,  
 & ho hym ȝeldeȝ aȝayn, ful ȝerne of hir wordeȝ,  
 Setteȝ hir soff[t]ly by his syde, & swypely ho laȝeȝ,  
 1480 & wyth a luflych loko ho layde<sup>2</sup> hym þyse wordeȝ:  
 "Sir, ȝif ȝe be Wawen, wonder me þynkkeȝ,  
 Wyȝe þat is so wel wrast alway to god,  
 & conneȝ not of compaynye þe costeȝ vnder-take,  
 1484 & if mon kennes yow hom to knowe, ȝe kest hom  
 of your mynde ;  
 þou hatȝ forȝeten ȝederly þat ȝisterday I taȝtte  
 alder-truest token of talk þat I cowþe."  
 "What is þat ?" quod þe wyghe, "I-wysse I wot  
 neuer,  
 1488 If hit be sothe þat ȝe breue, þe blame is myn awen."

The lady of the  
 castle again visits  
 Sir Gawayne.

Softly she sits by  
 his side,

[Fol. 111.]

and tells the  
 knight that he  
 has forgotten  
 what she taught  
 him the day be-  
 fore.

<sup>1</sup> The MS. is here almost illegible.

<sup>2</sup> sayde (?).

"I taught you of  
kissing," she  
says, "that be-  
comes every  
knight."

Gawayne says  
that he must not  
take that which is  
forbidden.

He is told that he  
is strong enough  
to enforce it.

The knight re-  
plies that every  
gift is worthless  
that is not given  
willingly.

The lady stoops  
down and kisses  
him.

"ȝet I kende yow of kyssyng," *quod* þe clere þenne,  
"Quere-so countenaunce is coupe, quikly to clayme,  
þat bicumes vche a knyȝt, þat cortaysy vses."

1492 "Do way," *quod* þat derf mon, "my dere, þat speche,  
For þat durst I not do, lest I denyed were, [ed.]  
If I were werned, I were wrang I-wysse, ȝif I profer-  
"Mafay," *quod* þe mere wyf, "ȝe may not be werned,  
1496 ȝe ar stif in-noghe to constrayne wyth strenkþe, ȝif  
yow lykeȝ,

ȝif any were so vilanous þat yow denaye<sup>1</sup> wolde."

"ȝe, be God," *quod* Gawayn, "good is *your* speche,  
Bot þrete is vn-bryuande in þede þer I lende,

1500 & vchegift þat is geuen not with goud wylle; [lykeȝ,  
I am at *your* comaundement, to kysse quen yow  
ȝemaylach quen yow lyst, & leue quen yow þynkkeȝ,  
in space."

1504 þe lady louteȝ a-down,  
& comlyly kysses his face,  
Much speche þay þer expoun,  
Of druryes greme & grace.

## XV.

"I would learn,"  
she says, "why  
you, who are so  
young and active,

so skilled in the  
true sport of love,

and so renowned  
a knight,

1508 "I woled<sup>2</sup> wyt at yow, wyȝe," þat worþy þer sayde,  
"& yow wrathed not þer-wyth, what were þe skylle,  
þat so ȝong & so ȝepe, as ȝe [ar] at þis tyme,  
So cortayse, so knyȝtly, as ȝe ar knowen oute,

1512 & of alle cheualry to chose, þe chef þyng a-losed,  
Is<sup>3</sup> þe lel layk of luf, þe lettrure of armes;  
F[or] to telle of þis tenelyng of þis trwe knyȝteȝ,  
Hit is þe tytelet, token, & tyxt of her werkkeȝ,

1516 Howle[des] for her lele luf hor lyueȝ hanauntered,  
Endured for her drury dulf stoundeȝ,  
& after wenged with her walour & voyded her care,  
& broȝt blysse in-to boure, with bountees hor awen.

1520 & ȝe ar knyȝt com-lokest kyd of *your* elde,

<sup>1</sup> de vaye, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> wolde (?).

<sup>3</sup> In (?).

- Your worde & your worchip walke; ay quere, [Fol. 111b.]  
 & I haf seten by *your-self* here sere twyes,  
 3et herde I neuer of *your* hed helde no worde; have never talked  
 to me of love.
- 1524 þat euer longed to luf, lasse ne more;  
 & 3e, þat ar so cortays & coynt of *your* hetes, You ought to  
 show a young  
 thing like me  
 some token of  
 'true-love's  
 crafts.'
- 1528 Why ar 3e lewed, þat alle þe los welde;,  
*Oþer* elles 3e demen me to dille, *your* dalyaunce to  
 for schame! [herken ?
- I com hider sengel, & sitte,  
 1532 To lerne at yow *sum* game,  
 Dos, teche; me of *your* wytte,  
 Whil my lorde is fro hame."
- So teach me of  
 your 'wit' while  
 my lord is from  
 home."

## XVI.

- "In goud fayþe," *quod* Gawayn, "God yow for- "It is a great  
 pleasure to me,"  
 1536 Gret is þe gode gle, & gomen to me huge, [3elde, says Sir Ga-  
 wayne, "to hear  
 you talk,  
 þat so worþy as 3e wolde wynne hidere, [knyzt,  
 & pyne yow *with* so pouer a mon, as play wyth *your*  
 With anyskynne; countenaunce, hit keuere; me ese;
- 1540 Bot to take þe *tornayle*<sup>1</sup> to my-self, to trwluf expoun,  
 & towche þe teme; of tyxt, & tale; of arme;,  
 To yow þat, I wot wel, welde; more slyzt  
 Of þat art, bi þe half, or a hundreth of seche  
 1544 As I am, *oþer* euer schal, in erde þer I leue,  
 Hit were a fole fele-folde, my fre, by my trawþe.  
 I wolde yowre wylnyng worche at my myzt,  
 As I am hyzly bihalden, & euer-more wylle  
 1548 Be seruauant to *your*-seluen, so saue me dryztyn!"  
 þus hym frayned þat fre, & fondet hym ofte, [elle;,  
 Forto haf wonnen hym to wo;e, what-so scho þo;zt  
 Bot he de-fended hym so fayr, þat no faut semed,  
 1552 Ne non euel on nawþer halue, nawþer þay wysten,  
 bot blysse;
- but I cannot un-  
 dertake the task  
 to expound true-  
 love and tales of  
 arms.
- I will, however,  
 act according to  
 your will,  
 and ever be your  
 servant."
- Thus Gawayne  
 defends himself.

<sup>1</sup> tornayle (?).

The lady having  
kissed the knight,  
takes leave of  
him.

1556      þay layed & layked longe,  
At þe last scho con hym kyssae,  
Hir leue fayre con scho fonge,  
& went hir waye Iwyssae.

## XVII.

Gawayne rises,  
hears mass, and  
then dines.  
[Fol. 112.]

Meanwhile the  
lord pursues the  
wild boar,

that bit the backs  
of his hounds  
amunder,

and caused the  
stiffest of the  
hunters to start.

The boar runs  
into a hole in a  
rock by the side  
of a brook.

The froth foams  
at his mouth.

None durst ap-  
proach him,

so many had he  
torn with his  
tusks.

1560      Then ruþes hym þe renk, & rysses to þe masse,  
& siþen hor diner watȝ dyȝt & derely serued.

1564      þe lede with þe ladyeȝ layked alle day,  
Bot þe lorde ouer þe londeȝ launced ful ofte,  
Sweȝ his vncely swyn, þat swyngeȝ bi þe bonkkeȝ,  
& bote þe best of his bracheȝ þe bakkeȝ in sunder ;

1568      þer he bode in his bay, tel<sup>1</sup> bawe-men hit breken,  
& made<sup>2</sup> hym, maw-gref his hed, forto mwe vtter ;  
So felle fioneȝ þer flete, when þe folk gedered ;  
Bot ȝet þe styffest to start bi stoundeȝ he made,

1572      Til at þe last he watȝ so mat, he myȝt no more renne,  
Bot in þe hast þat he myȝt, he to a hole wyȝneȝ,  
Of a rasse, bi a rokk, þer renneȝ þe boerne,  
He gete þe bonk at his bak, bigȝneȝ to scrape,

1576      þe froþe femed<sup>3</sup> at his mouth vnfayre bi þe wykeȝ,  
Whetteȝ his whyte tuscheȝ ; with hym þen irked  
Alle þe burneȝ so bolde, þat hym by stoden,  
To nye hym on-ferum, bot neȝe hym non durst  
for woþe ;

1580      He hade hurt so mony byforne,  
þat al þuȝt<sup>4</sup> þenne ful loþe,  
Be more wyth his tuscheȝ torne,  
þat breme watȝ [&] brayn-wod bothe .

## XVIII.

The knight, see-  
ing the boar at  
bay,

alights from his  
horse,

Til þe knyȝt com hym-self, kachande his blonk,  
Syȝ hym byde at þe bay, his burneȝ bysyde,  
He lyȝtes luflych<sup>5</sup> adoun, leueȝ his corsour,

<sup>1</sup> til (?).<sup>2</sup> madee, in MS.<sup>3</sup> fomed (?).<sup>4</sup> þoȝt (?).<sup>5</sup> MS. luslych.

- 1584 Braydeȝ out a bryȝt bront, & bigly forth strydeȝ,  
 Foundeȝ fast þurȝ þe forth, þer þe felle bydeȝ,  
 þe wylde watȝ war of þe wyȝe wiȝh weppen in honde, and seeks to at-  
 tack him with his  
 sword.  
 Hef hyȝly þe here, so hetterly he fnast,
- 1588 þat fele ferde for þe frekeȝ,<sup>1</sup> lest felle hym þe worre;  
 þe swyn setteȝ hym out on þe segge euen, The "swine sets  
 out" upon the  
 man,  
 þat þe burne & þe bor were boȝe vpon hepeȝ,  
 In þe wy[ȝ]t-est of þe water, þe worre hade þat oȝer;
- 1592 For þe mon merkkeȝ hym wel, as þay mette fyrst, who, aiming well,  
 Set sadly þe scharp in þe slot euen,  
 Hit hym vp to þe hult, þat þe hert schyndered, wounds him in  
 the pit of the  
 stomach.  
 & he ȝarrande hym ȝelde, & ȝedoun<sup>2</sup> þe water,
- 1596 ful tyt;  
 A hundreth houndeȝ hym hent, [Fol. 112b.]  
 þat bremely con hym bite, The boar is soon  
 bitten to death  
 by a hundred  
 hounds.  
 Burneȝ him broȝt to bent,
- 1600 & doggeȝ to dethe endite.

## XIX.

- There watȝ blawynȝ of prys in mony breme horne, Then was there  
 blowing of horns  
 Heȝe halowing on hiȝe, wiȝh hapeleȝ þat myȝt;  
 Brachetes bayed þat best, as bidden þe maystereȝ, and baying of  
 hounds.
- 1604 Of þat chargeaunt chace þat were cheȝ hunteȝ.  
 þenne a wyȝe þat watȝ wys vpon wod crafteȝ, One wise in wood-  
 craft begins to  
 unlance the boar.  
 To vnlace þis bor luffy bigynneȝ;  
 Fyrst he hewes of his hed, & on hiȝe setteȝ, First he hews off  
 the head, then  
 rends him by the  
 back.
- 1608 & syȝen rendeȝ him al roghe bi þe rygge after,  
 Braydeȝ out þe boweles, brenneȝ hom on glede, He next removes  
 the bowels, broils  
 them on the  
 ashes, and there-  
 with rewards his  
 hounds.  
 With bred blent þer-wiȝh his braches rewardeȝ;  
 Syȝen he britneȝ out þe brawen in bryȝt brode  
 [s]cheldeȝ,
- 1612 & hatȝ out þe hastletteȝ, as hiȝtly bisemeȝ;  
 & ȝet hem halcheȝ al hole þe halueȝ to-geder, Then the hastlets  
 are removed.  
 The two halves  
 are next bound  
 together and  
 hung upon a pole.  
 & syȝen on a stif stange stoutly hem henges.

<sup>1</sup> freke (?).<sup>2</sup> ȝede down (?).



- Now with þis ilk swyn þay swengen to home ;  
 1616 þe bores hed watȝ borne bifore þe burnes seluen,  
 þat him for-ferde in þe forþe, þurȝ forse of his honde,  
 so stronge ;  
 Til he seȝ *sir* Gawayne,  
 1620 In halle hym þoȝt ful longe,  
 He calde, & he com gayn,  
 His feeȝ þer for to fonge.

Gawayne is called  
to receive the  
spoil.

## XX.

- The lord of the  
land is well  
pleased when he  
sees *Sir* Gawayne.  
 1624 þe lorde ful lowde with lote, & laȝed myry,  
 When he seȝe *sir* G : with solace he spekeȝ ;  
 þe goude ladyȝ were geten, & gedered þe meyny,  
 He scheweȝ hem þe scheldeȝ, & schapes hem þe tale,  
 Of þe largesse, & þe lenþe, þe liþerneȝ also,  
 1628 Of þe were of þe wylde swyn, in wod þer he fled.  
 þat oper knyȝt ful comly comended his dedeȝ,  
 & praysed hit as gret prys, þat he proued hade ;  
 For suche a browne of a best, þe bolde burne sayde,  
 1632 Ne such sydes of a swyn, seȝh he neuer are.  
 þenne hondeled þay þe hoge hed, þe hende mon  
 hit praysed,  
 & let lodly þerat þe lorde forto here :  
 " Now Gawayn," quod þe god mon, " þis gomen  
 is *your* awen,  
 1636 Bi fyn for-warde & faste, faythely ȝe knowe."  
 " Hit is sothe," quod þe segge, " & as siker trwe ;  
 Alle my get I schal yow gif agayn, bi my trawþe."  
 He [hent] þe hapel aboute þe halse, & hendely  
 hym kysses,  
 1640 & efter-sones of þe same he serued hym þere.  
 " Now ar we euen," quod þe hapel, " in þis euen-tide,  
 Of alle þe couenauntes þat we knyȝt, syþen I com  
 bi lawe ;" [hider,  
 1644 þe lorde sayde, " bi saynt Gile,  
 ȝe ar þe best þat I knowe,

He shows him  
the shields of  
the wild boar,  
and tells him of  
its length and  
breadth.

Such a "brawn  
of a beast," *Sir*  
Gawayne says, he  
never has seen.

[Fol. 113.]

Gawayne takes  
possession of it  
according to  
covenant.

and in return  
kisses his host,

who declares his  
guest to be the  
best he knows.

3e ben ryche in a whyle,  
Such chaffer & 3e drowe."

## XXI.

- 1648 penne pay teldet table3 [on] trestes alofte,  
Kesten clope3 vpon, clere ly3t penne  
Wakned bi wo3e3, waxen torches  
Segge3 sette, & serued in sale al aboute ;  
1652 Much glam & gle glent vp per-inne,  
Aboute þe fyre vpon flet, & on fele wyse,  
At þe soper & after, mony apel songe3,  
As countdutes of kryst-masse, & carole3 newe,  
1656 With alle þe manerly merþe þat mon may of telle.  
& euer oure luflych knyzt þe lady bi-syde ;  
Such semblaunt to þat segge semly ho made,  
Wyth stille stollen countenaunce, þat stalworth to  
plese,  
1660 þat al for-wondered wat3 þe wy3e, & wroth with  
hym-seluen,  
Bot he nolde not for his nurture nurne hir a-3ayne3,  
Bot dalt with hir al in daynte, how-se-euer þe dede  
to wrast ; [turned  
1664 Quen pay hade played in halle,  
As longe as hor wylle hom last,  
To chambre he<sup>1</sup> con hym calle,  
& to þe chem-ne pay past.
- Tables are raised  
aloft,  
cloths cast upon  
them,  
and torches are  
lighted.
- With much mirth  
and glee,
- supper is served  
in the hall,
- and euer our  
lovely knight by  
the lady sits,
- who does all she  
can to please her  
companion.
- When they had  
long played in  
the hall,
- they proceeded  
"to chamber."

## XXII.

- 1668 Ande þer pay dronken, & dalten, & demed eft nwe,  
To norne on þe same note, on nwe3ere3 euen ;  
Bot þe knyzt craued leue to kayre on þe morn,  
For hit wat3 ne3 at þe terme, þat he to<sup>2</sup> schulde.  
1672 þe lorde hym letted of þat, to lenge hym resteyd,  
& sayde, "as I am trwe segge, I siker my trawþe,  
þouschal cheue to þe grene chapel, þycharres to make,
- There they drank  
and discoursed.
- Gawayne begs  
leave to depart  
on the morrow.
- [Fol. 113b.]
- His hoet swears  
to him,  
that he shall  
come to the Green
- <sup>1</sup> ho (?).
- <sup>2</sup> to (?).



- & he trantes & tornayeeȝ þurȝ mony tene groue ;  
 1708 Hamlounȝ, & herkeneȝ, bi heggeȝ ful ofte ;  
 At þe last bi a littel dich he lepeȝ ouer a spennȝ,  
 Steleȝ out ful stilly bi a strothe rande,  
 Went haf wylt of þe wode, with wyleȝ fro þe houndes,  
 1712 þenne watȝ he went, er he wyst, to <sup>1</sup> a wale tryster,  
 þer þre þro at a þrich þrat hym at ones,  
 al graye ;  
 He blenched aȝayn bilyue,  
 1716 & stifly start onstray,  
 With alle þe wo on lyue,  
 To þe wod he went away.
- and pursue him  
 through many a  
 rough grove.  
 [Fol. 114.]  
 The fox at last  
 leaps over a  
 spinny,  
 and by a rugged  
 path seeks to get  
 clear from the  
 hounds.  
 He comes upon  
 one of the hunt-  
 ing stations,  
 where he is at-  
 tacked by the  
 dogs.  
 However, he slips  
 them,  
 and makes again  
 for the wood.

## XXIV.

- Thenne watȝ hit lif vpon list to lyþen þe houndȝ,  
 1720 When alle þe mute hade hym met, menged to-geder,  
 Suche a sorȝe at þat syȝt þay sette on his hede,  
 As alle þe clamber and clyffeshade clatered on hepes;  
 Here he watȝ halawed, when hapeleȝ hym metten,  
 1724 Loude he watȝ ȝayned, with ȝarande speche ;  
 þer he watȝ þreted, & ofte þef called,  
 & ay þe titleres at his tayl, þat tary he ne myȝt ;  
 Ofte he watȝ runnen at, when he out rayked,  
 1728 & ofte reled in aȝayn, so reniarde watȝ wylȝ.  
 & ȝe he lad hem bi lag, mon, þe lorde & his meyny ;  
 On þis maner bi þe mountes, quyle myd, ouer, vnder,  
 Whyle þe hende knyȝt at home holsumly slepeȝ,  
 1732 With-inne þe comly cortynȝes, on þe colde morne.  
 Bot þe lady for luf let not to slepe,  
 Ne þe purpose to payre, þat pyȝt in hir hert,  
 Bot ros hir vp radly, rayked hir þeder,  
 1736 In a mery mantyle, mete to þe erȝe,  
 þat watȝ furred ful fyne with felleȝ, wel pured,  
 No hweȝ goud on hir hede, bot þe hazer stones
- Then was it fine  
 sport to listen to  
 the hounds,  
 and the hallooing  
 of the hunters.  
 There the fox was  
 threatened and  
 called a thief.  
 But Reynard was  
 wily,  
 and led them  
 astray over  
 mounts.  
 Meanwhile the  
 knight at home  
 soundly sleeps  
 within his comely  
 curtains.  
 The lady of the  
 castle, clothed in  
 a rich mantle,

<sup>1</sup> to to, in MS.

- her throat and  
bosom all bare,  
comes to Ga-  
wayne's chamber,  
opens a window,  
and says,  
"Ah! man, how  
canst thou sleep,  
[Pol. 1146.]  
this morning is  
so clear?"
- Trased aboute hir tressour, be twenty in clusteres ;  
1740 Hir pryuen face & hir prote þrowen al naked,  
Hir brest bare bifore, & bihinde eke.  
Ho comeȝ with-inne þe chambre dore, & closes hit  
hir after,  
Waynez<sup>1</sup> vp a wyndow, & on þe wyȝe calleȝ,  
1744 & radly þus re-hayted hym, with hir riche wordeȝ,  
with<sup>2</sup> chere ;  
"A! mon, how may þou slepe,  
þis morning is so clere?"  
1748 He watȝ in drowping depe,  
Bot þenne he con hir here.

## XXV.

- The knight was  
then dreaming of  
his forthcoming  
adventure at the  
Green Chapel.  
He awakes and  
speaks to his fair  
visitor,  
who sweetly  
kisses him.  
Great joy warms  
the heart of Sir  
Gawayne,  
and "great peril  
between them  
stood."
- In dreȝ droupyng of dreme draueleȝ þat noble,  
As mon þat watȝ in mornyng of mony þro þoȝtes,  
1752 How þat destiné schulde þat day [dyȝt] his wyrde,  
At þe grene chapel, when he þe gome metes,  
& bi-houes his buffet abide, with-oute debate more ;  
Bot quen þat comly he keuereȝ his wyttes,  
1756 Swenges out of þe sweuenes, & swareȝ with hast.  
þe lady luflych com laȝande swete,  
Felle ouer his fayre face, & fetly hym kyssed ;  
He welcumeȝ hir worpily, with a wale chere ;  
1760 He seȝ hir so glorious, & gayly atyred,  
So fautles of hir fetures, & of so fyne hewes,  
Wiȝt wallande Ioye warmed his hert ;  
With smoȝe smylyng & smolt þay smeten in-to  
merþe,  
1764 þat al watȝ blis & bonchef, þat breke hem bi-twene,  
& wyne ;  
þay lanced wordes gode,  
Much wele þen watȝ þer-inne,  
1768 Gret perile bi-twene hem stod,  
Nif mare of hir knyȝt myne.

<sup>1</sup> waynez(?).<sup>2</sup> bi, à sec. manu.

## XXVI.

- For þat prynce of pris de-presed hym so pikke,  
 Nurned hym so neȝe þe þred, þat nede hym bi-houed,  
 1772 *Oper lach per hir luf, oper lodly re-fuse ;*  
 He cared for his cortaysye, lest crafayn he were,  
 & more for his meschef, ȝif he schulde make synne,  
 & be traytor to þat tolke, þat þat telde aȝt.  
 1776 "God schylde," *quod* þe schalk, "þat schal not  
 be-falle !" The knight is  
sorely pressed.
- With luf-laȝyng a lyt, he layd hym by-syde*  
*Alle þe spechez of specialté þat sprange of her*  
*mouthes.*  
*Quod* þat burde to þe burne, "blame ȝe disserue,  
 1780 ȝif ȝe luf not þat lyf þat ȝe lye nexte,  
 Bifore alle þe wyȝez in þe worlde, wounded in hert,  
 Bot if ȝe haf a lemman, a leuer, þat yowlykeȝ better,  
 & folden fayth to þat fre, festned so harde, He fears lest he  
should become a  
traitor to his  
host.
- 1784 þat yow lausen ne lyst, & þat I leue nouȝe ; The lady inquire  
whether he has a  
mistress that he  
loves better than  
her.  
 And þat ȝe telle me þat, now trwly I pray yow,  
 For alle þe lufez vpon lyue, layne not þe soȝe,  
 for gile." [Fol. 115.]
- 1788 þe knyȝt sayde, "be sayn Ion," Sir Gawayne  
swears by St.  
John that he  
neither has nor  
desires one.  
 & smeȝely con he smyle,  
 "In fayth I welde riȝt non,  
 Ne non wil welde þe quile."

## XXVII.

- 1792 "þat is a worde," *quod* þat wyȝt, "þat worst is of alle,  
 Bot I am swared for soȝe, þat sore me pinkkeȝ ;  
 Kyssemen now comly, & Ischal cach heȝen, [louyes]."  
 I may bot mourne vpon molde, as may þat much She then kisses  
him, sighing for  
sorrow.
- 1796 Sykande ho sweȝe doun, & semly hym kyssed,  
 & siȝen ho seueres hym fro, & says as ho stondes,  
 "Now, dere, at þis de-partyng, do me þis ese,  
 Gif me sumquat of þy gifte, þi gloue if<sup>1</sup> hit were, She desires some  
gift,  
by which to re-  
member him.
- 1800 þat I may mynne on þe mon, my mournyng to lassen."

<sup>1</sup> of, in MS.

Gawayne tells  
her that she is  
worthy of a better  
gift than he can  
bestow.

He has no men  
with mails con-  
taining precious  
things.

Then says that  
lovesome,

"Though I had  
nought of yours,  
yet should ye  
have of mine."

She offers him a  
gold ring,

but he refuses to  
accept it,  
[Fol. 115b.]  
as he has none to  
give in return.

Very sorrowful  
was that fair one  
on account of his  
refusal.

She takes off her  
"girdle,"

- "Now I wysse," quod þat wyȝe, "I wolde I hade here  
þe leuest þing for þy luf, þat I in londe welde,  
For ȝe haf deserued, forsoþe, sellyly ofte  
1804 More rewarde bi resoun, þen I reche myȝt,  
Bot to dele yow for drurye, þat dawed bot naked ;  
Hit is not your honour to haf at þis tyme  
A gloue for a garysoun, of Gawayneȝ gifteȝ,  
1808 & I am here [on] an erande in erdeȝ vncoupe,  
& hauenomen wyth no maleȝ, with menskful þingeȝ;  
þat mislykeȝ me, ladé, for luf at þis tyme,<sup>1</sup>  
Iche tolke mon do as he is tan, tas to non ille,  
1812 ne pine."  
"Nay, hende of hyȝe honourȝ,"  
Quod þat lufsum vnder lyne,  
"þaȝ I hade oȝt<sup>2</sup> of youreȝ,  
1816 ȝet schulde ȝe haue of myne."

## XXVIII.

- Ho raȝt hym a riche rynk<sup>3</sup> of red golde werkeȝ,  
Wyth a starande ston, stondande alofte,  
þat bere blusschande bemeȝ as þe bryȝt sunne ;  
1820 Wyt ȝe wel, hit watȝ worth wele ful hoge.  
Bot þe renk hit renayed, & redyly he sayde,  
"I wil no gifteȝ for gode, my gay, at þis tyme ;  
I haf none yow to norne, ne noȝt wyl I take."  
1824 Ho bede hit hym ful bysily, & he hir bode wernes,  
& swere swyftel[y] his sothe, þat he hit sese nolde ;  
& ho sore þat he forsoke, & sayde þer-after,  
"If ȝe renay my rynk,<sup>3</sup> to ryche for hit sameȝ,  
1828 ȝe wolde not so hyȝly halden be to me,  
I schal gif yow my girdel, þat gaynes yow lasse."  
Ho laȝt a lace lyȝtly, þat<sup>4</sup> leke vmbe hir sydeȝ,  
Knit vpon hir kyrtel, vnder þe clere mantyle,  
1832 Gered hit watȝ with grene sylke, & with golde  
schaped,

<sup>1</sup> tync, in MS.    <sup>2</sup> noȝt (?).    <sup>3</sup> ryng (?).    <sup>4</sup> þat þat, in MS.

- Noȝt bot arounde brayden, beten *with* fyngreȝ ;  
 & þat ho bede to þe burne, & blyþely bi-soȝt  
 þaȝ hit vn-worpi were, þat he hit take wolde.
- 1836 & he nay þat he nolde neghe *in* no wyse,  
 Nauþer golde ne garysoun, er God hym *grace* sende,  
 To acheue to þe chaunce þat he hade chosen þere.  
 " & þerfore, I pray yow, displese yow noȝt,
- 1840 & letteȝ be *your* businesse, for I bayþe hit yow neuer  
 to graunte ;  
 I am derely to yow biholde,  
 Bi-cause of *your* sembelaunt,  
 1844 & euer *in* hot & colde  
 To be *your* trwe seruauant."
- and beseeches him to take it.  
 Gawayne again refuses to accept anything,  
 but promises, "ever in hot and in cold, to be her true servant."

XXIX.

- "Now forsake ȝe þis silke," sayde þe burde þenne,  
 "For hit is symple *in* hit-self, & so hit wel semeȝ ?
- 1848 Lo ! so hit is littel, & lasse hit is worpy ;  
 Bot who-so knew þe costes þat knit ar þer-inne,  
 He wolde hit prayse at more prys, paraurenture ;  
 For quat gome so is gorde *with* þis grene lace,
- 1852 While he hit hade hemely halched aboute,  
 þer is no hapel vnder heuen to-hewe hym þat myȝt ;  
 For he myȝt not be slayn, for slyȝt vpon erþe."  
 þen kost þe knyȝt, & hit come to his hert, [were,
- 1856 Hit were a Iuel for þe Iopardé, þat hym iugged  
 When he acheued to þe chapel, his chek forto fech ;  
 Myȝ<sup>1</sup> he haf slypped to be vn-slayn, þe sleȝt were  
 noble.  
 þenne he pulged with hir þrepe, & þoled hirtospeke,
- 1860 & ho bere on hym þe belt, & bede hit hym swyþe,  
 & he granted, & [ho] hym gafe with a goud wyлле,  
 & bisoȝt hym, for hir sake, disceuer hit neuer, [doȝ,  
 Bot to lelly layne for<sup>2</sup> hir lorde ; þe leude hym acor-
- 1864 þat neuer wyȝe schulde hit wyt, Iwysse, bot pay  
 for noȝte ; [twayne,
- "Do you refuse it," says the lady, "because it is simple ?  
 Whoso knew the virtues that it possesses, would highly prize it.  
 For he who is girded with this green lace,  
 cannot be wounded or slain."  
 The knight thinks of his adventure at the Green Chapel.  
 The lady presses him to accept the lace.  
 [Fol. 116.]  
 He consents not only to take the girdle, but to keep the possession of it a secret.

<sup>1</sup> myȝt (?).

<sup>2</sup> fro (?).



By that time the lady has kissed him thrice. 1868  
 He þonkked hir oft ful swyþe,  
 Ful þro with hert & þoȝt.  
 Bi þat on þrynne syþe,  
 Ho hatȝ kyst þe knyȝt so toȝt.

## XXX.

Then she takes her leave.  
 Gawayne then dresses himself,  
 and conceals the love-lace about his person.  
 He then hies to mass,  
 and shrives him of his misdeeds,  
 and prays for absolution.  
 He returns to the hall, and makes himself so merry among the ladies, with comely carols,  
 that they said,  
 "Thus merry was he never before since hither he came."

1872 Thenne lachcheȝ ho hir leue, & leueȝ hym þere,  
 For more myrþe of þat mon moȝt ho not gete;  
 When ho<sup>1</sup> watȝ gon, sir G. gereȝ hym sone,  
 Rises, & riches hym in araye noble,  
 Lays vp þe luf-lace, þe lady hym raȝt,  
 Hid hit ful holdely, þer he hit eft fonde;  
 1876 Syþen cheuely to þe chapel choses he þe waye,  
 Preuely aproched to a prest, & prayed hym þere  
 þat he wolde lyfte<sup>2</sup> his lyf, & lern hym better,  
 How his sawle schulde be saued, when he schuld  
 seye heþen.  
 1880 þere he schrof hym schyrly, & schewed his mys-  
 dedeȝ,  
 Of þe more & þe mynne, & merci besecheȝ,  
 & of absolucioun he on þe segge calles;  
 & he asoyled hym surely, & sette hym so clene,  
 1884 As domeȝ-day schulde haf ben diȝt on þe morn.  
 & syþen he mace hym as mery among þe fre ladyes,  
 With comlych caroles, & alle kynnes ioye,  
 As neuer he did bot þat daye, to þe derk nyȝt,  
 1888 with blys;  
 Vche mon hade daynte þare,  
 Of hym, & sayde Iwysse,  
 þus myry he watȝ neuer are,  
 1892 Syn he com hider, er þis.

## XXXI.

Gawayne's host is still in the field.

Now hym lenge in þat lee, þer luf hym bi-tyde;  
 ȝet is þe lorde on þe launde, ledande his gomnes,

<sup>1</sup> he, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> lyfte (?).

- He hatȝ forfaren þis fox, þat he folȝed longe ;  
 1896 As he sprent ouer a spenné, to spye þe schrewe,  
 þer as he herd þe howndes, þat hasted hym swyþe,  
 Renaud com richchande þurȝ a roȝe greue,  
 & alle þe rabel in a res, ryȝt at his helez.  
 1900 þe wyȝe watȝ war of þe wyldre, & warly abides,  
 & braydeȝ out þe bryȝt bronde, & at þe best casteȝ ;  
 & he schunt for þe scharp, & schulde haf arered,  
 A rach rapes hym to, ryȝt er he myȝt,  
 1904 & ryȝt bifore þe hors fete þay fel on hym alle,  
 & woried me þis wyly wyth a wroth noyse.  
 þe lorde lyȝteȝ bilyue, & cacheȝ by<sup>1</sup> sone,  
 Rased hym ful radly out of þe rach mouȝes,  
 1908 Haldeȝ heȝe ouer his hede, haloweȝ faste,  
 & þer bayen hym mony bray<sup>2</sup> houndeȝ ;  
 Huntres hyȝed hem þeder, with horneȝ ful mony,  
 Ay re-chatande aryȝt til þay þe renk seȝen ;  
 1912 Bi þat watȝ comen his compeyny noble,  
 Alle þat euer ber bugle blowed at ones,  
 & alle piȝe oȝer halowed, þat hade no hornes,  
 Hit watȝ þe myriest mute þat euer men herde,  
 1916 þe rich rurd þat þer watȝ raysed for renaude saule,  
 with lote ;  
 Hor houndeȝ þay þer rewarde,  
 Her<sup>3</sup> hedeȝ þay fawne & frote,  
 1920 & syȝen þay tan reynarde,  
 & tyrnen of his cote.
- He has destroyed the fox.  
 [Fol. 116b.] He spied Reynard coming through a "rough grove,"  
 and tried to hit him with his sword.  
 The fox "shunts," and is seized by one of the dogs.  
 The lord takes him out of the hound's mouth.  
 Hunters hasten thither with horns full many.  
 It was the merriest meet that ever was heard.  
 The hounds are rewarded,  
 and then they take Reynard and "turn off his coat."

## XXXII.

- & þenne þay helden to home, for hit watȝ nieȝ nyȝt,  
 Strakande ful stoutly in hor store horneȝ ;  
 1924 þe lorde is lyȝt at þe laste at hys lef home,  
 Fyndeȝ fire vpon flet, þe freke þer by-side,  
 Sir Gawayn þe gode, þat glad watȝ with alle,  
 Among þe ladies for luf he ladde much ioye,  
<sup>1</sup> hym (?).      <sup>2</sup> brap (?).      <sup>3</sup> Her her, in MS.
- The hunters then hasten home.  
 The lord at last alights at his dear home,  
 where he finds Gawayne amusing the ladies.

The knight comes  
forward and war-  
rimes the host.

And something to  
excuse him from  
him there.

See 1. 249  
"By Christ," says  
the knight, "I  
have had much  
harm."

I have hunted all  
day and have  
greater hunting,  
but the fox is  
the best of  
the fox, for  
a year reward for  
three such  
kisses."

He then tells him  
how the fox was  
slain.

With much mirth  
and minstrelsy  
they made merry,

until the time  
came for them to  
part.

Gawayne takes  
leave of his host,

- 1388 He were a blessing of love, þat bradde to þe erþe,  
His swete souned hym wel þat softe watȝ forred,  
& his hode of þat like henged on his schulder,  
Kynnde al of blazunder were boþe al aboute.
- 1389 He meted me þis god man in myddes þe flore,  
& al with gomen he hym gret, & goodly he sayde,  
- I schal fynde upon fyrst oure forwardeȝ nouþe,  
þat we speelly has spoken, þe spared watȝ nodrynke,"
- 1390 þen wodes he [þe] knyȝt & kysses hym þryes,  
As sweetly & saily as he hem sette coupe. [sele,  
- Bi Knyȝt," quod þat oþer knyȝt, "ȝe each much  
In cherisance of þis chaffer, ȝif ȝe had goud chepeȝ."
- 1391 "ȝe of þe chepe no charg," quod chefly þat oþer,  
"As is þerly payed þe chepeȝ þat I aȝte."  
"Marr," quod þat oþer mon, "myn is bi-hynde,  
For I haf hunted al þis day, & noȝt haf I geten,
- 1392 Bot þis foule fox felle, þe fende haf þe godeȝ,  
& þat is ful pore, for to pay for suche prys þinges,  
As ȝe haf þryȝt me here, þro suche þro cosses,  
so gode."
- 1393 "I-noȝ," quod sir Gawayn,  
"I þonk yow, bi þe rode;"  
& how þe fox watȝ slayn,  
He tolde hym, as þay stode.

## XXXIII.

- 1352 With merþe & mynstralsye, wyth meteȝ at hor wylle,  
þay maden as mery as any men moȝten,  
With lazyng of ladies, with loteȝ of bordes;  
Gawayn & þe gode mon so glad were þay boþe,
- 1356 Bot if þe douthe had doted, oþer dronken ben oþer,  
Boþe þe mon & þe meyny maden mony iapeȝ,  
Til þe sesoun watȝ seȝen, þat þay seuer moste;  
Burneȝ to hor bedde be-houed at þe laste.
- 1360 þenne loȝly his leue at þe lorde fyrst  
Fochcheȝ þis fre mon, & fayre he hym þonkkeȝ;

"Of such a sellyly<sup>1</sup> soiorne, as I haf hade here,  
Your honour, at þis hyȝe fest, þe hyȝe kyng yow  
ȝelde!

and thanks him  
for his happy  
"sojourn."

1964 I ȝef yow me for on of youreȝ, if yowre-self lykeȝ,  
For I mot nedes, as ȝe wot, meue to morne;

& ȝe me take sum tolke, to teche, as ȝe hyȝt,

þe gate to þe grene chapel, as god wyl me suffer

He asks for a  
man to teach him  
the way to the  
Green Chapel.

1968 To dele, on nwȝereȝ day, þe dome of my wyrdes."

"In god fayþe," *quod* þe god mon. "wyth a goud  
wylle;

Al þat euer I yow hyȝt, halde schal I rede."

þer asyngnes he a seruauunt, to sett hym in þe weye,

A servant is as-  
signed to him,  
[Fol. 117b.]

1972 & coundue hym by þe downeȝ, þat he no drechch had,  
For to f[e]rk þurȝ þe fryth, & fare at þe gaynest,  
bi greue.

þe lorde Gawayn con þonk,

1976 Such worchip he wolde hym weue;

þen at þo ladyȝ wlonk,

and then he takes  
leave of the ladies,

þe knyȝt hatȝ tan his leue.

## XXXIV.

With care & wyth kyssyng he carppeȝ hem tille,

kissing them sor-  
rowfully.

1980 & fele þryuande þonkkeȝ he þrat hom to haue,

& þay ȝelden hym aȝay[n] ȝeþly þat ilk;

þay bikende hym to Kryst, with ful colde sykyngȝ.

They commend  
him to Christ.

Syþen fro þe meyny he menskly de-partes;

He then departs,  
thanking each  
one he meets "for  
his service and  
solace."

1984 Vche mon þat he mette, he made hem a þonke,

For his seruyse, & his solace, & his sere pyne,

þat þay wyth busynes had ben, aboute hym to  
serue;

& vche segge as sore, to seuer with hym þere,

1988 As þay hade wonde worþyly with þat wlonk euer.

þen with ledes & lyȝt he watȝ ladde to his chambre,

He retires to rest  
but sleeps but  
little,

& blyþely broȝt to his bedde, to be at his rest;

ȝif he ne slepe soundly, say ne dar I,

<sup>1</sup> selly (?).

for much has he  
to think of on the  
morrow.

1992 For he hade muchē on þe morn to mynne, ȝif he  
wolde,

in þoȝt ;

Let him there lie  
still.

Let hym lyȝe þere stille,

He hatȝ<sup>1</sup> nere þat he soȝt,

Be still awhile,  
and I shall tell  
how they  
wrought.

1996

& ȝe wyl a whyle be styлле,

I schal telle yow how þay wroȝt.

# [FYTTE THE FOURTH.]

## I.

New Year's Day  
approaches.

NOW neȝeȝ þe nwȝere, & þe nyȝt passeȝ,  
þe day dryueȝ to þe derk, as dryȝtyn biddeȝ ;

The weather is  
stormy.

2000 Bot wyȝde wedereȝ of þe worlde wakned þeroute,  
Clowdes kesten kenly þe colde to þe erþe,  
Wyth nyȝe<sup>2</sup> in-noghe of þe norþe, þe naked to teneȝ ;

Snow falls.

þe snawe snitered ful snart, þat snayped þe wyȝde ;

2004 þe werbelande wynde wapped fro þe hyȝe,

The dales are full  
of drift.

& drof vche dale ful of dryftes ful grete.

þe leude lystened ful wel, þat leȝ in his bedde,

þaȝ he lowkeȝ his liddeȝ, ful lyttel he slepes ;

Gawayne in his  
bed hears each  
cock that crows.

2008 Bi vch kok þat crue, he knwe wel þe steuen.

[Fol. 118.]

De-liuierly he dressed vp, er þe day sprenged,

For þere watȝ lyȝt of a lau[m]pe, þat lemed in his  
chambre ;

He calls for his  
chamberlain,  
and bids him  
bring him his  
armour.

He called to his chamberlayn, þat cofly hym swared,

2012 & bede hym bryng hym his bruny, & his blonksadel ;  
þat oþer ferkeȝ hym vp, & fecheȝ hym his wedeȝ,  
& grayȝeȝ me sir Gawayn vpon a grett wyse.

Fyrst he clad hym in his cloȝeȝ, þe colde for to wereȝ ;

2016 & syȝen his oþer harnays, þat holdely watȝ keped,  
Boȝe his paunce, & his plateȝ, piked ful clene,

Men knock off  
the rust from his  
rich habergeon.

þe rynges<sup>3</sup> rokked of þe roust, of his riche bruny ;  
& al watȝ fresch as vpon fyrst, & he watȝ fayn þenne

2020

to þonk ;

<sup>1</sup> watȝ (?).

<sup>2</sup> nywe (?).

<sup>3</sup> rynges (?).

- He hade vpon vche pece,  
 Wypped ful wel & wlonk ;  
 þe gayest in to Grece,  
 2024 þe burne bede bryng his blonk.
- The knight then  
calls for his steed.

## II.

- Whyle þe wlonkest wedes he warp on hym-seluen ;  
 His cote, wyth þe conysaunce of þe clere werkeþ,  
 Ennurned vpon veluet *vertuuus*<sup>1</sup> stoneþ,  
 2028 Aboute beten, & bounden, enbrauded semeþ,  
 & fayre furred *with-inne* wyth fayre pelures.  
 3et laft he not þe lace, þe ladieþ gifte,  
 þat for-gat not Gawayn, for gode of hym-seluen ;  
 2032 Bi he hade belted þe bronde vpon his balþe hauncheþ,  
 þenn dressed he his drurye double hym aboute ;  
 Swyþesweþled vmbe his swange swetely, þat knyzt,  
 þe gordel of þe grene silke, þat gay wel bisemed,  
 2036 Vpon þat ryol red cloþe, þat ryche watþ to schewe.  
 Bot wered not þis ilk wyþe for wele þis gordel,  
 For pryde of þe pendaunteþ, þaþ polyst þay were,  
 & þaþ þe glyterande golde glent vpon endeþ,  
 2040 Bot forto sauen hym-self, whensuffer hym by-houed,  
 To byde bale *with-out*e dabate, of bronde hym to were,  
 oþer knyffe ;  
 Bi þat þe bolde mon boun,  
 2044 Wynneþ þeroute bilyue,  
 Alle þe meyny of renoun,  
 He þonkkeþ ofte ful ryue.
- While he clothed  
himself in his  
rich weeds,  
  
he forgot not  
the "lace," the  
lady's gift,  
  
but with it doubly  
girded his loins.  
  
He wore it not  
for its rich orna-  
ments,  
  
"but to save him-  
self when it be-  
hoved him to  
suffer."  
  
All the renowned  
assembly he  
thanks full oft.

## III.

- Thenne watþ Gryngolet grayþe, þat gret watþ & huge,  
 2048 & hade ben soiourned sauerly, & in a siker wyþe,  
 Hym lyst prik for poynt, þat proude hors þenne ;  
 þe wyþe wyneþ hym to, & wyteþ on his lyre,  
 & sayde soberly hym-self, & by his soth swereþ,
- [Fol. 118b.]  
Then was Grin-  
golet arrayed,  
  
full ready to  
prik on.

<sup>1</sup> *vertuous* (?).

- 2052 "Here is a meyny in þis mote, þat on menske þenk-  
 þe mon hem maynteines, ioy mot þay haue ; [keȝ,  
 þe leue lady, on lyue luf hir bityde ;  
 ȝif þay for charyté cherysen a gest,
- Gawayne returns  
 thanks for the  
 honour and kind-  
 ness shown to  
 him by all.
- 2056 & halden honour in her honde, þe hapel hem ȝelde,  
 þat haldeȝ þe heuen vpon hyȝe, & also yow alle !  
 & ȝif I myȝt lyf vpon londe lede any quyle,  
 I schuld rech yow sum rewarde redyly, if I myȝt."
- He then steps  
 into his saddle,
- 2060 þenn steppeȝ he in-to stirop, & strydeȝ alofte ;  
 His schalk schewed hym his schelde, on schulder  
 he hit laȝt,  
 Gordeȝ to Gryngolet, with his gilt heleȝ,  
 & he starteȝ on þe ston, stod he no lenger,
- and "starts on  
 the stone" with-  
 out more delay.
- 2064 to prauunce ;  
 His hapel on hors watȝ þenne,  
 þat bere his spere & launce.
- "This castle to  
 Christ I com-  
 mend ; may he  
 give it ever good  
 chance !"
- 2068 "þis kastel to Kryst I kenne,  
 He gef hit ay god chaunce !"

## IV.

- The gates are  
 soon opened.
- The knight passes  
 thereout,
- and goes on his  
 way accompanied  
 by his guide.
- They climb by  
 cliffs,
- where each "hill  
 had a hat and a  
 mist-cloak,"
- [Fol. 119.]
- The brygge watȝ brayde doun, & þe brode ȝateȝ  
 Vnbarred, & born open, vpon boȝe halue ;  
 þe burne blessed hym bilyue, & þe bredeȝ passed ;
- 2072 Prayses þe porter, bifore þe prynce kneled,  
 Gef hym God & goud day, þat Gawayn he saue ;  
 & went on his way, with his wyȝe one,  
 þat schulde teche hym to tourne to þat tene place,
- 2076 þer þe ruful race he schulde re-sayue.  
 þay boȝen bi bonkkeȝ, þer boȝeȝ ar bare,  
 þay clomben bi clyffeȝ, þer clengeȝ þe colde ;  
 þe heuen watȝ vp halt, bot vgly þer vnder,
- 2080 Mist mugged on þe mor, malt on þe mounteȝ,  
 Vch hille hade a hatte, a myst-hakel huge ;  
 Brokeȝ byled, & breke, bi bonkkeȝ aboute, [ued.  
 Schyre schaterande on schoreȝ, þer þay doun schow-
- 2084 Welawylle watȝ þe way, þer þay bi wod schulden,

- Til hit watȝ sone sesoun, þat þe sunne ryseȝ,  
 untill daylight.  
 þat tyde ;  
 þay were on a hille ful hyȝe,  
 They were then  
 2088 þe quyte snaw lay bisyde ; on a "hill full  
 þe burne þat rod hym by, high."  
 Bede his mayster abide, The servant bade  
 saying,

## V.

- "For I haf wonnen yow hider, wyȝe, at þis tyme,  
 "I have brought  
 2092 & now nar ȝe not fer fro þat note place, you hither,  
 þat ȝe han spied & spuryed so specially after ; ye are not now far  
 Bot I schal say yow for soþe, syþen I yow knowe, from the noted  
 & ȝe ar a lede vpon lyue, þat I wel louy, place.  
 2096 Wolde ȝe worch bi my wytte, ȝe worped þe better.  
 þe place þat ȝe prece to, ful perelous is halden ; Full perilous is it  
 þer wonȝe a wyȝe in þat waste, þe worst vpon erþe ; esteemed.  
 For he is stiffe, & sturne, & to strike louies, The lord of that  
 'waste' is stiff  
 and stern.  
 2100 & more he is þen any mon vpon myddelerde,  
 & his body bigger þen þe best fowre,  
 þat ar in Arþureȝ hous, Hestor<sup>1</sup> oþer oþer.  
 His body is bigger  
 'than the best  
 four in Arthure's  
 house.'  
 He cheueȝ þat chaunce at þe chapel grene ;  
 2104 þer passes non bi þat place, so proude in his armes, None passes by  
 þat he ne dynneȝ hym to deþe, with dynt of his the Green Chapel,  
 'that he does not  
 ding to death  
 with dint of his  
 hand.'  
 For he is a mon methles, & mercy non vses, [honde ;  
 For he hit chorle, oþer chaplayn, þat bi þe chapel  
 2108 Monk, oþer masse-prest, oþer any mon elles, [rydes, For be it churl  
 Hym þynk as queme hym to quelle, as quyk go monk, mass-  
 priest, 'or any  
 man else,' he  
 kills them all.  
 hym seluen.  
 For-þy I say þe as soþe as ȝe in sadel sitte,  
 Com ȝe þere, ȝe be kyllled, [I] may þe knyȝt rede,  
 2112 Trawe ȝe me þat trwely, þaȝ ȝe had twenty lyues  
 to spende ;  
 He hatȝ wonyd here ful ȝore,  
 He has lived  
 there full long.  
 On bent much baret bende,  
 2116 Azayn his dynteȝ sore,  
 ȝe may not yow defende."

<sup>1</sup> Hector (?).



## VI.

Wherefore, good  
sir Gawayne, let  
this man alone.

Go by some other  
region.

[Fol. 119b.]  
I swear by God  
and all His saints,  
that I will never  
say that ever ye  
attempted to flee  
from any man."

Gawayne replies  
that to shun this  
danger would  
mark him as a  
"coward knight."

To the Chapel,  
therefore, he will  
go.

though the owner  
thereof were a  
stern knave.

"Full well can  
God devise his  
servants for to  
save."

"Mary!" quoth  
the other,  
"since it pleases  
thee to lose thy  
life,

take thy helmet  
on thy head, and  
thy spear in thy  
hand,  
and ride down  
this path by yon  
rock-side,  
till thou come to  
the bottom of the  
valley;  
look a little to  
the left,  
and thou shalt  
see the Chapel it-  
self and the man  
that guards it."

- "For-þy, goude sir Gawayn, let þe gome one,  
& gotȝ a-way sum oþer gate, vpon Goddeȝ halue;  
2120 Cayreȝ bi sum oþer kyth, þer Kryst mot yow spede;  
& I schal hyȝ me hom aȝayn, & hete yow fyrre,  
þat I schal swere bi God, & alle his gode halȝeȝ,  
As help me God & þe halydam, & oþeȝ in-noghe,  
2124 þat I schal lelly yow layne, & lance neuer tale,  
þat euer ȝe fondet to fle, for freke þat I wyst."  
"Grant merci," quod Gawayn, & gruchyng he  
"Wel worth þe wyȝe, þat woldeȝ my gode, [sayde,  
2128 & þat lelly me layne, I leue wel þou woldeȝ!  
Bot helde þou hit neuer so holde, & I here passed,  
Founded for ferde for to fle, in fourme þat þou telleȝ,  
I were a knyȝt kowarde, I myȝt not<sup>1</sup> be excused.  
2132 Bot I wyl to þe chapel, for chaunce þat may falle,  
& talk wyth þat ilk tulk þe tale þat me lyste,  
Worþe hit wele, oþer wo, as þe wyrde lykeȝ  
hit hafe;

- 2136 þaȝe he be a sturn knape,  
To stiȝtel, &<sup>2</sup> stad with staue,  
Ful wel con dryȝtyn schape,  
His seruaunteȝ forto saue."

## VII.

- 2140 "Mary!" quod þat oþer mon, "now þou so much  
spelleȝ,  
þat þou wylt þyn awen nye nyme to þy-seluen,  
& þe lyst lese þy lyf, þe lette I ne kepe;  
Haf here þi helme on py hede, þi spere in þi honde,  
2144 & ryde me doun þis ilk rake, bi ȝon rokke syde,  
Til þou be broȝt to þe boȝem of þe brem valay;  
þenne loke a littel on þe launde, on þi lyfte honde,  
& þou schal se in þat slade þe self chapel,  
2148 & þe borelych burne on bent, þat hit kepeȝ.  
Now fareȝ wel on Godeȝ half, Gawayn þe noble,

<sup>1</sup> mot, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> &, in MS.

- For alle þe golde vpon grounde I nolde go wyth þe,  
Ne bere þe felazschip þurȝ þis fryth on fote fyrrē."
- 2152 Bi þat þe wyȝe in þe wod wendeȝ his brydel,  
Hit þe hors with þe heleȝ, as harde as he myȝt,  
Lepeȝ hym ouer þe launde, & leueȝ þe knyȝt þere,  
al one.
- 2156 "Bi Goddeȝ self," *quod* Gawayn,  
"I wyl nauȝer grete ne grone,  
To Goddeȝ wyllē I am ful bayn,  
& to hym I haf me tone."
- Having thus  
spoken the guide  
takes leave of the  
knight.
- "By God's self,"  
says Sir Ga-  
wayne, "I will  
neither weep nor  
groan.  
To God's will I  
am full ready."

## VIII.

- 2160 Therne gyrdȝ he to Gryngolet, & gedereȝ þe rake,  
Schowueȝ in bi a schore, at a schaze syde,  
Rideȝ þurȝ þe roȝe bonk, ryȝt to þe dale; [þoȝt,  
& þenne he wayted hym aboute, & wylde hit hym þoȝt.
- 2164 & seȝe no syngne of resette, bisydeȝ nowhere,  
Bot hyȝe bonkkeȝ & brent, vpon boȝe halue,  
& ruȝe knokled knarreȝ, with knorned stoneȝ;  
þe skweȝ of þe scowtes skayued<sup>1</sup> hym þoȝt.
- 2168 þenne he houed, & wyth-hylde his hors at þat tyde,  
& ofte chaunged his cher, þe chapel to seche;  
He seȝ non suche in no syde, & selly hym þoȝt,  
Sone a lyttel on a launde, a lawe as hit we[re];
- 2172 A balȝ berȝ, bi a bonke, þe brymmē by-syde,  
Bi a forȝ of a flode, þat ferked þare;  
þe borne blubred þer-inne, as hit boyled hade.  
þe knyȝt kacheȝ his caple, & com to þe lawe,
- 2176 Liȝteȝ doun lufflyly, & at a lynde tacheȝ  
þe rayne, & his riche, with a roȝe braunche;  
þen[n]e he boȝeȝ to þe berȝe, aboute hit he walkeȝ,  
D[e]batande with hym-self, quat hit be myȝt.
- 2180 Hit hade a hole on þe ende, & on ayȝer syde,  
& ouer-grown with gresse in glodes ay where,  
& al watȝ holȝ in-with, nobot an olde caue,
- [Fol. 120.]  
Then he pursues  
his journey,  
rides through the  
dale, and looks  
about.
- He sees no sign  
of a resting-place,  
but only high and  
steep banks.
- No chapel could  
he discern.
- At last he sees a  
hill by the side  
of a stream;
- thither he goes,  
alights and fast-  
ens his horse to a  
branch of a tree.
- He walks around  
the hill, debating  
with himself  
what it might be,

<sup>1</sup> skayned (?).

at last fende  
at all cave in the  
crag.

2184

Or a creuisse of an olde cragge, he coupe hit noȝt deme  
with spelle,

"We,<sup>1</sup> lorde," quod þe gentyle knyȝt,

"Wheþer þis be þe grene chapelle ;

He prays that  
about in þe night  
he may tell his  
matins.

2188

He myȝt aboute myd-nyȝt,

[þ]e dele his matynnes telle !"

## IX.

"Truly," says Sir  
Gawayne, "a  
desert is here,

a fitting place for  
the man in green  
to deal here his  
devotions in devil  
fashion."

It is the most  
curse-lirk that  
ever I entered."

[Fol. 120b.]

Roaming about  
he hears a loud  
noise,

from beyond the  
brook.

It clattered like  
the grinding of a  
scythe on a grind-  
stone.

It whirled like a  
mill-stream.

2192

"Now i-wysse," quod Wowayn, "wysty is here ;

þis oritore is vgly, with erbez ouer-grown ;

Wel bisemeȝ þe wyȝe wruxled in grene

Dele here his deuocioun, on þe deueleȝ wyȝe ;

Now I fele hit is þe fende, in my fyue wytteȝ,

þat hatȝ stoken me þis steuen, to strye me here ;

þis is a chapel of meschaunce, þat chekke hit by-tyde,

2196

Hit is þe corsesdest kyrk, þat euer I com inne !"

With heȝe helme on his hede, his launce in his honde,

He romeȝ vp to þe rokke of þo roȝ woneȝ ;

þene herde he of þat hyȝe hil, in a harde roche,

2200

Bizonde þe broke, in a bonk, a wonder breme noyse,

Quat ! hit clatered in þe clyff, as hit cleue schulde,

As one vpon a gryndelston hade grounden a syȝe ;

What ! hit wharred, & whette, as water at a mulne,

2204

What ! hit rusched, & ronge, rawþe to here.

þenne "bi Godde," quod Gawayn, "þat gere as<sup>2</sup> I

Is ryched at þe reuerence, me renk to mete, [trowe,

bi rote ;

2208

Let God worche we loo,

Hit helppeȝ me not a mote,

My lif þaȝ I for-goo,

Drede dotȝ me no lote."

"Though my life  
I forgo," says  
the knight, "no  
noise shall terrify  
me."

## X.

Then crieth he  
aloud,  
"Who dwells  
here discourse  
with me to hold?"

2212

Thenne þe knyȝt con calle ful hyȝe,

"Who stiztleȝ in þis sted, me steuen to holde ?

<sup>1</sup> wel (?).

<sup>2</sup> at, in MS.

- For now is gode Gawayn goande ryzt here,  
 If any wyȝe oȝt wyl wynne hider fast,  
 2216 *Oȝer* now, *oȝer* neuer, his nedeȝ to spede." [hede,  
 "Abyde," *quod* on on þe bonke, abouen ouer his  
 "& þou schal haf al in hast, þat I þe hyzt ones."  
 Ȝet he rusched on þat rurde, rapely a þrowe,  
 2220 & wyth quettyng a-wharf, er he wolde lyzt ;  
 & syȝen he keureȝ bi a cragge, & comeȝ of a hole,  
 Whyrlande out of a wro, wyth a felle weppen,  
 A deneȝ ax nwe dyzt, þe dynt *with* [t]o ȝelde  
 2224 *With* a borelych bytte, bende by þe halme,  
 Fyled in a fylor, fowre fote large,  
 Hit watȝ no lasse, bi þat lace þat lemed ful bryzt.  
 & þe gome in þe grene gered as fyrst,  
 2228 Boȝe þe lyre & þe leggeȝ, lokkeȝ, & berde,  
 Saue þat fayre on his fote he foundeȝ on þe erȝe,  
 Sette þe stele to þe stone, & stalked bysyde.  
 When he wan to þe watter, þer he wade nolde,  
 2232 He hypped ouer on hys ax, & orpedly strydeȝ,  
 Bremly broȝe on a bent, þat brode watȝ a-boute,  
 on snawe.  
 Sir Gawayn þe knyzt con mete,  
 2236 He ne lutte hym no þyng lowe,  
 þat *oȝer* sayde, "now, *sir* swete,  
 Of steuen mon may þe trowe."

Now is the good  
Gawayne going  
aright.

He hears a voice  
commanding him  
to abide where  
he is.

Soon there comes  
out of a hole, with  
a fell weapon,

a Danish axe,  
quite new,

the "knight in  
green," clothed as  
before.

When he reaches  
the stream, he  
hops over and  
strides about.

[Fol. 121.]  
He meets Sir Ga-  
wayne without  
obeisance.  
The other tells  
him that he is  
now ready for  
conversation.

## XI.

- "Gawayn," *quod* þat grene gome, "God þe mot  
 2240 I-wysse þou art welcom,<sup>1</sup> wyȝe, to my place, [loke!  
 & þou hatȝ tymed þi trauayl as *true*<sup>2</sup> mon schulde ;  
 & þou knoweȝ þe couenaunteȝ kest *vus* by-twene,  
 At þis tyme twelmonyth þou toke þat þe falled,  
 2244 & I schulde at þis nwe ȝere ȝeȝly þe quyte.  
 & we ar in þis valay, verayly oure one,  
 Here ar no renkes vs to rydde, rele as *vus* likeȝ ;

"God preserve  
thee!" says the  
Green Knight,

"as a true knight  
'thou hast timed  
thy travel.'  
Thou knowest  
the covenant be-  
tween us,  
that on New  
Year's day I  
should return thy  
blow.  
Here we are  
alone ;

<sup>1</sup> welcon, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> true in MS.

Have off thy  
helmet and take  
thy pay at once."

"By God," quoth  
Sir Gawayne, "I  
shall not be-  
grudge thee thy  
wili."

Then he shows  
his bare neck,

and appears un-  
daunted.

- Haf þy<sup>1</sup> helme of þy hede, & haf here þy pay ;  
 2248 Busk no more debate þen I þe bede þenne,  
 When þou wypped of my hede at a wap one."  
 "Nay, bi God," quod Gawayn, "þat me gost lante,  
 I schal gruch þe no grwe, for grem þat fallez ;  
 2252 Botstyztel þe vpon on strok, & I schal stonde styлле,  
 & warp þe no wernyng, to worch as þe lykez,  
 no whare."  
 He lened with þe nek, & lutte,  
 2256 & schewed þat schyre al bare,  
 & lette as he nozt dutte,  
 For drede he wolde not dare.

## XII.

Then the man in  
green seizes his  
grim tool.

With all his force  
he raises it aloft.

As it came gliding  
down,  
Sir Gawayne  
shrank a little  
with his should-  
ers.

The other re-  
proved him, say-  
ing,

"Thou art not  
Gawayne that is  
so good esteemed,

[Fol. 121b.]  
for thou fleest for  
fear before thou  
feelest harm.  
I never flinched  
when thou  
struckest.

My head flew to  
my foot, yet I  
never fled,

- Then þe gome in þe grene grayþed hym swyþe,  
 2260 Gedereȝ vp lys grymme tole, Gawayn to smyte;  
 With alle þe bur in his body he ber hit on lofte,  
 Munt as maȝtyly, as marre hym he wolde ;  
 Hade hit dryuen adoun, as dreȝ as he atled,  
 2664 þer hade ben ded of his dynt, þat doȝty watȝ euer.  
 Bot Gawayn on þat giserne glyfte hym bysyde,  
 Ashitcomglydandeadoun, on glode hym to schende,  
 & schranke a lytel with þe schulderes, for þe  
 scharp yrne. [haldeȝ,  
 2268 þat oper schalk wyth a schunt þe schene wyth-  
 & þenne repreued he þe prynce with mony prowde  
 wordeȝ :  
 "þou art not Gawayn," quod þe gome, "þat is so  
 goud halden,  
 þat neuer arȝed for no here, by hylle ne be vale,  
 2272 & now þou fles for ferde, er þou fele harmeȝ ;  
 Such cowardise of þat knyȝt cowþe I neuer here.  
 Nawþer fyked I, ne flaȝe, freke, quen þou myntest,  
 Ne kest no kauelacion, in kynges hous Arthor,  
 2276 My hede flaȝ to my fote, & ȝet flaȝ I neuer ;  
 & þou, er any harme hent, arȝeȝ in hert,

<sup>1</sup> MS. þy þy.

- Wherefore þe better burne me burde be called  
þer-fore."
- 2280 *Quod* G: , " I schunt oneȝ,  
& so wyl I no more,  
Bot þaȝ my hede falle on þe stoneȝ,  
I con not hit restore.
- wherefore I  
ought to be called  
the better man."
- " I schunted once,"  
says Gawayne,  
" but will no  
more.

## XIII.

- 2284 Bot busk, burne, bi þi fayth, & bryng me to þe poynt,  
Dele to me my destiné, & do hit out of honde,  
For I schal stonde þe a strok, & start no more,  
Til þyn ax haue me hitte, haf here my trawþe."
- 2288 " Haf at þe þenne," *quod* þat oþer, & heueȝ hit  
aloſte,  
& wayteȝ as wroþely, as he wode were ;  
He mynteȝ at hym maȝtyly, bot not þe mon ryueȝ,<sup>1</sup>  
With-helde heterly h[i]s honde, er hit hurt myȝt.
- 2292 Gawayngrayþely hit bydeȝ, & glent with no membre,  
Bot stode styлле as þe ston, oþer a stubbe auþer,  
þatraþeled is in roche grounde, with roteȝ a hundreth.  
þen muryly efte con he mele, þe mon in þe grene.
- 2296 " So now þou hatȝ þi hert holle, hitte me bihou[e]s ;  
Halde þe now þe hyȝe hode, þat Arþur þe raȝt,  
& kepe þy kanel at þis kest, ȝif hit keuer may."  
G: ful gryndelly with greme þenne sayde,
- 2300 " Wy þresch on, þou þro mon, þou preteȝ to longe,  
I hope þat þi hert arȝe wyth þyn awen seluen."  
" For soþe," *quod* þat oþer freke, " so felly þou  
spekeȝ,  
I wyl no lenger on lyte lette þin ernde,
- 2304 riȝt nowe."  
þenne tas he<sup>2</sup> hym stryþe to stryke,  
& frounses boþe lyppe & browe,  
No meruayle þaȝ hym myslyke,  
2308 þat hoped of no rescowe.
- Bring me to the  
point; deal me  
my destiny at  
once."
- " Have at thee,  
then," says the  
other.
- With that he aims  
at him a blow.
- Gawayne never  
flinches, but  
stands as still as  
a stone.
- " Now," says the  
Green Knight, " I  
must hit thee,  
since thy heart is  
whole."
- " Thrash on,"  
says the other.
- Then the Green  
Knight makes  
ready to strike.

<sup>1</sup> ? *ryueȝ* = touches.<sup>2</sup> he he, in MS.

## XIV.

He let fall his  
loom on the bare  
[Fol. 122.]  
neck of Sir Ga-  
wayne.

The sharp  
weapon pierced  
the flesh so that  
the blood flowed.

When the knight  
saw the blood on  
the snow,

he unsheathed his  
sword, and thus  
spake :

"Cease, man, of  
thy blow.

If thou givest me  
any more, readily  
shall I requite  
thee.

Our agreement  
stipulates only  
one stroke."

The Green Knight  
rested on his axe,

looked on Sir Ga-  
wayne, who ap-  
peared bold and  
fearless,

and addressed  
him as follows :  
"Bold knight, be  
not so wroth,

- He lyftes lyztly his lome, & let hit doun fayre,  
With þe barbe of þe bitte bi þe bare nek ;  
þaȝ he homered heterly, hurt hym no more,  
2312 Bot snyrt hym on þat on syde, þat seuered þe hyde ;  
þe scharp schrank to þe flesche þurȝ þe schyre grece,  
þat þe schene blod ouer his schulderes schot to þe  
erþe.  
& quen þe burne sez þe blode blenk on þe snawe,  
2316 He sprit forth spenne fote more þen a spere lenþe,  
Hent heterly his helme, & on his hed cast,  
Schot with his schuldereȝ his fayre schelde vnder,  
Braydeȝ out a bryȝt sworde, & bremely he spekeȝ ;  
2320 Neuer syn þat he watȝ burne borne of his moder,  
Watȝ he neuer in þis worlde, wyȝe half so blyþe :—  
" Blynne, burne, of þy bur, bede me no mo ;  
I haf a stroke in þis sted with-oute stryf hent,  
2324 & if þow recheȝ me any mo, I redyly schal quyte,  
& ȝelde ȝederly aȝayn, & þer to ȝe tryst,  
& foo ;  
Bot on stroke here me falleȝ,  
2328 þe couenaunt schop ryȝt so,  
[Sikered]<sup>1</sup> in Arþureȝ halleȝ,  
& þer-fore, hende, now hoo !"

## XV.

- The hapel heldet hym fro, & on his ax rested,  
2332 Sette þe schaft vpon schore, & to þe scharp lened,  
& loked to þe leude, þat on þe launde ȝede,  
How þat doȝty dredles deruely þer stondeȝ,  
Armed ful aȝleȝ ; in hert hit hym lykeȝ.  
2336 þenn he meleȝ muryly, wyth a much steuen,  
& wyth a r[a]ykande rurde he to þe renk sayde,  
" Bolde burne, on þis bent be not so gryndel ;  
No mon here vn-manerly þe mys-boden habbe,  
2340 Ne kyd, botas couenaunde, at kyngeȝ kort schaped ;

<sup>1</sup> Illegible.

- I hyȝt þe a strok, & þou hit hatȝ, halde þe wel payed,  
 I relece þe of þe remnaunt, of ryȝtes alle oper ;  
 ȝif<sup>1</sup> I deliuer had bene, a boffet, paraunter,
- 2344 I coupe wrope loker haf waret, [&] to þe haf wroȝt  
 Fyrst I mansed þe muryly, with a mynt one, [anger.<sup>2</sup>  
 & roue þe wyth no rof, sore with ryȝt I þe profered,  
 For þe forwarde þat we fest in þe fyrst nyȝt,
- 2348 & þou trystily þe trawpe & trwly me haldeȝ,  
 Al þe gayne þow me gef, as god mon schulde ;  
 þat oper munt for þe morne, mon, I þe profered,  
 þou kyssedes my clere wyf, þe cossez me raȝtez,
- 2352 For hoþe two here I þe bede bot two bare myntes,  
 boutē scape ;  
 Trwe mon trwe restore,  
 þenne þar mon drede no waþe ;
- 2356 At þe prid þou fayled þore,  
 & þer-for þat tappe ta þe.

I promised thee  
 a stroke and thou  
 hast it, be satis-  
 fied.

I could have dealt  
 worse with thee.

I menaced thee  
 with one blow for  
 [Fol. 122b.]  
 the covenant be-  
 tween us on the  
 first night.

Another I aimed  
 at thee because  
 thou kissedst my  
 wife.

A true man  
 should restore  
 truly, and then  
 he need fear no  
 harm.  
 Thou failedst at  
 the third time,  
 and therefore take  
 thee that tap.  
 (See l. 1861.)

## XVI.

- For hit is my wede þat þou wereȝ, þat ilke wouen gir-  
 Mynowen wyf hit þe weued, I wot wel forsoþe ; [del,
- 2360 Now know I wel þy cosses, & þy costes als,  
 & þe wowyng of my wyf, I wroȝt hit myseluen ;  
 I sende hir to asay þe, & sothly me þynkkeȝ,  
 On þe faultlest freke, þat euer on fote ȝede ;
- 2364 As perle bi þe quite pese is of prys more,  
 So is Gawayn, in god fayth, bi oper gay knyȝtez.  
 Bot here yow lakked a lyttel, *sir*, & lewte yow  
 wonted, [þer,  
 Bot þat watȝ for no wylyde werke, ne wowyng nau-
- 2368 Bot for ȝe lufed *your* lyf, þe lasse I yow blame."  
 þat oper stif mon in study stod a gret whyle ;  
 So agreued for greme he gryed with-inne,  
 Alle þe blode of his brest blende in his face,
- 2372 þat al he schrank for schome, þat þe schalk talked.  
 þe forme worde vpon folde, þat þe freke meled,—

For my weed  
 (woven by my  
 wife) thou wear-  
 est.

I know thy kisses  
 and my wife's  
 wooing.

I sent her to try  
 thee, and faultless  
 I found thee.

But yet thou sin-  
 nedst a little,

for love of thy  
 life."

Gawayne stands  
 confounded.

<sup>1</sup> uf, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> This word is doubtful.



"Cursed," he  
says, "be cow-  
ardice and covet-  
ousness both!"  
Then he takes off  
the girdle and  
throws it to the  
knight.

He curses his  
cowardice,

and confesses  
himself to have  
been guilty of un-  
truth.

[Fol. 123.]

- "Cursed worth cowarddyse & couetyse bope!  
In yow is vylany & vyse, þat vertue disstryez."  
þenne he kagt to þe knot, & þe keest lawsez,  
Brayde broþely þe belt to þe burne seluen:  
"Lo! þer þe falssyng, foule mot hit falle!  
For care of þy knokke cowardyse me tazt  
2380 To a-corde me with couetyse, my kynde to for-sake,  
þat is larges & lewte, þat longez to knyztez.  
Now am I fawty, & falce, & ferde haf ben euer;  
Of trecherye & vn-trawþe bope bityde sorze  
2384 & care!  
I bi-knowe yow, knyzt, here styлле,  
Al fawty is my fare,  
Letez me ouer-take your wyлле,  
2388 & efte I schal be ware."

## XVII.

Then the other,  
laughing, thus  
spoke:

"Thou art con-  
fessed so clean,

that I hold thee  
as pure as if thou  
hadst never been  
guilty.

I give thee, sir,  
the gold-hemmed  
girdle,

as a token of thy  
adventure at the  
Green Chapel.  
Come again to my  
abode, and abide  
there for the re-  
mainder of the  
festival."

- Thenn loze þat oþer leude, & luflyly sayde,  
"I halde hit hardily<sup>1</sup> hole, þe harme þat I hade;  
þou art confessed so clene, be-knownen of þy mysses,  
2392 & hatz þe penaunce apert, of þe poynt of myn egge,  
I halde þe polyssed of þat plyzt, & pured as clene,  
As þou hadez neuer forfeted, syþen þou watz fyrst  
& Igifþe, sir, þe gurdel þat is golde hemmed; [borne.  
2396 For hit is grene as my gounne, sir G:, 3e maye  
þenk vpon þis ilke þrepe, þer þou forth þryngez  
Among prynces of prys, & þis a pure token  
Of þe chaunce of þe grene chapel, at cheualrous  
2400 & 3e schal in þis nwe 3erazayn to my wonez, [knyztez;  
& we schyn reuel þe remnaunt of þis rychе fest,  
ful bene."  
þer laped hym fast þe lorde,  
2404 & sayde, "with my wyf, I wene,  
We schal yow wel acorde,  
þat watz your enemy kene."

<sup>1</sup> hardilyly, in MS.

## XVIII.

- "Nay, for soþe," *quod* þe segge, & sesed hys helme,  
 2408 & hatȝ hit of hendely, & þe hapel þonkkeȝ,  
 "I haf soioined sadly, sele yow bytyde,  
 & he ȝelde hit yow ȝare, þat ȝarkkeȝ al menskes!  
 & comaundeȝ me to þat cortays, *your* comlych fere,  
 2412 Boþe þat on & þat oþer, myn honoured ladyeȝ,  
 þat þus hor knyȝt wyth hor kest han koyntly  
 bigyled.  
 Bot hit is no ferly, þaȝ a fole madde,  
 & þurȝ wyles of wymmen be wonen to sorȝe;  
 2416 For so watȝ Adam *in* erde *with* one bygyled,  
 & Salamon *with* fele sere, & Samson eft soneȝ,  
 Dalyda dalt hym hys wyrde, & Daunth þer-after  
 Watȝ blended *with* Barsabe, þat much bale poled.  
 2420 Now þese were wrathed wyth her wyles, hit were  
 a wyne huge,  
 To luf hom wel, & leue hem not, a leude þat coupe,  
 For þes wer forme<sup>1</sup> þe freest þat folȝed alle þe sele,  
 Ex-ellently of alle þyse oþer, vnder heuen-ryche,  
 2424 þat mused;  
 & alle þay were bi-wyled,  
 With<sup>2</sup> wymmen þat þay vsed,  
 þaȝ I be now bigyled,  
 2428 Me þink me burde be excused."
- "Nay, forsooth,"  
 says Gawayne,  
 "I have sojourn-  
 ed sadly, but bliss  
 betide thee!  
 Commend me to  
 your comely wife  
 and that other  
 lady who have  
 beguiled me.  
 But it is no mar-  
 vel for a man to  
 be brought to  
 grief through a  
 woman's wiles.  
 Adam, Solomon,  
 Samson, and Da-  
 vid were beguiled  
 by women.  
 How could a man  
 love them and be-  
 [Fol. 123b.]  
 lieve them not?  
 Though I be now  
 beguiled, me-  
 thinks I should  
 be excused.

## XIX.

- "Bot your gordel," *quod* G: "God yow for-ȝelde!  
 þat wyl I welde wyth good wylle, not for þe  
 wyne golde,  
 Ne þe saynt, ne þe sylk, ne þe syde pendaundes,  
 2432 For wele, ne for worchyp, ne for þe wlonk werkkeȝ,  
 Bot *in* syngne of my surfet I schal se hit ofte;  
 When I ride *in* renoun, remorde to myseluen  
 þe faut & þe fayntyse of þe flesche crabbed,
- But God reward  
 you for your  
 girdle.  
 I will wear it in  
 remembrance of  
 my fault.

<sup>1</sup> forme (?).<sup>2</sup> with wyth, in MS.

And when pride  
shall prick me,  
a look to this lace  
shall abate it.

- 2436 How tender hit is to entyse teches of fylþe ;  
& þus, quen prydeschalme pryk, for prowes of armes,  
þe loke to þis luf lace schal leþe my hert.  
Bot on I wolde yow pray, displeses yow neuer ;  
2440 Syn 3e be lorde of þe 3onde[r] londe, þer I haf lent  
inne,

But tell me your  
right name and I  
shall have done."

The Green Knight  
replies, "I am  
called Bernlak de  
Hautdesert,  
through might of  
Morgain la Fay,  
the pupil of Mer-  
lin.

- Wyth yow wyth worschyp,—þe wy3e hit yow 3elde  
þat vp-halde3 þe heuen, & on hy3 sitte3,—  
How norne 3e yowre ry3t nome, & þenne no more?"  
2444 "þat schal I telle þe trwly," quod þat oþer þenne,  
"Bernlak de Hautdesert I hat in þis londe,  
þur3 my3t of Morgne la Faye, þat in my hous lenges,  
&<sup>1</sup> koyntyse of clergie, bi craftes wel lerned,  
2448 þe maystres of Merlyn, mony ho<sup>2</sup> taken ;  
For ho hat3 dalt drwry ful dere sum tyme,  
With þat conable klerk, þat knowes alle your kny3te3  
at hame ;

She can tame even  
the haughtiest.

- 2452 Morgne þe goddes,  
þer-fore hit is hir name ;  
Welde3 non so hy3e hawtesse,  
þat ho ne con make ful tame.

## XX.

It was she who  
caused me to test  
the renown of the  
Round Table,

[Fol. 124.]  
hoping to grieve  
Guenever and  
cause her death  
through fear.

She is even thine  
aunt.

"Therefore come  
her and make  
þy in my  
k."

- 2456 Ho wayned me vpon þis wyse to your wynne halle,  
For to assay þe surquidre, 3if hit soth were,  
þat rennes of þe grete renoun of þe Rounde Table ;  
'Ho wayned me þis wonder, your wytte3 to reue,  
2460 For to haf greued Gaynour, & gart hir to dy3e,  
With gopnyng<sup>3</sup> of þat ilke gomen, þat gostlych  
speked,  
With his hede in his honde, bifore þe hy3e table.  
þat is ho þat is at home, þe auncian lady ;  
2164 Ho is euen þyn aunt, Arpure3 half suster,  
þe duches do3ter of Tyntagelle, þat dere Vter after  
Hade Arpur vpon, þat aþel is nowþe.  
þerfore I eþe þe, haþel, to com to þy naunt,

<sup>1</sup> in (?).

<sup>2</sup> ho hat3 (?).

<sup>3</sup> glopnyng (?).

- 2468 Make myry in my hous, my meny þe louies,  
 & I wol þe as wel, wyȝe, bi my faythe,  
 As any gome vnder God, for þy grete troupe."  
 & he nikked hym naye, he nolde bi no wayes ;
- 2472 þay acolen & kyssen, [bikennen] ayþer oþer  
 To þe prynce of paradise, & parten ryȝt þere,  
 on coolde ;  
 Gawayn on blonk ful bene,
- 2476 To þe kynges burȝ buskeȝ bolde,  
 & þe knyȝt in þe enker grene,  
 Whider-warde so euer he wolde.

Gawayne refuses  
to return with the  
Green Knight.

On horse full fair  
he bends to Ar-  
thur's hall.

## XXI.

- Wylde wayes in þe worlde Woven now rydeȝ,
- 2480 On Gryngolet, þat þe grace hade geten of his  
 lyue ;  
 Ofte he herbered in house, & ofte al þeroute,  
 & mony a-venture in vale, & venquyst ofte,  
 þat I ne tyȝt, at þis tyme, in tale to remene.
- 2484 þe hurt watȝ hole, þat he hade hent in his nek,  
 & þe blykkande belt he bere þeraboute,  
 A belef as a bauderyk, bounden bi his syde,  
 Loken vnder his lyfte arme, þe lace, with a knot,
- 2488 In tokenyng he watȝ tane in tech of a faute ;  
 & þus he comes to þe court, knyȝt al in sounde.  
 þer wakned wele in þat wone, when wȝst þe grete,  
 þat gode G : watȝ comen, gayn hit hym þoȝt ;
- 2492 þe kyng kysseȝ þe knyȝt, & þe whene alce,  
 & syþen mony syker knyȝt, þat soȝt hym to haylce,  
 Of his fare þat hym frayned, & ferlyly he telles ;  
 Biknoweȝ alle þe costes of care þat he hade,—
- 2496 þe chaunce of þe chapel, þe chere of þe knyȝt,  
 þe luf of þe ladi, þe lace at þe last.  
 þe nirt in þe nek he naked hem schewed,  
 þat he laȝt for his vnleute at þe leudes hondes,
- 2500 for blame ;

Wild ways now  
Gawayne rides.

Ofte he harboured  
in house and oft  
thereout.

The wound in his  
neck became  
whole.  
He still carried  
about him the  
belt,

in token of his  
fault.  
Thus he comes to  
the Court of King  
Arthur.  
Great then was  
the joy of all.

The king and his  
knights ask him  
concerning his  
journey.  
Gawayne tells  
them of his ad-  
ventures,

[Fol. 124b.]  
the love of the  
lady, and lastly  
of the lace.  
He showed them  
the cut in his  
neck.

He groaned for  
grief and shame,  
and the blood  
rushed into his  
face.

He tened quen he schulde telle,  
He goned for gref & grame ;  
þe blod in his face con melle,  
2504 When he hit schulde schewe, for schame.

## XXII.

"Lo!" says he,  
handling the lace,  
"this is the band  
of blame,

a token of my  
cowardice and  
covetousness.

I must needs  
wear it as long  
as I live."

The king com-  
forts the knight,  
and all the court  
too.

Each knight of  
the brotherhood  
agrees to wear a  
bright green belt,  
for Gawayne's  
sake,

who ever more  
honoured it.

Thus in Arthur's  
day this advent-  
ure befell.

He that bore the  
crown of thorns  
bring us to his  
bliss:

"Lo! lorde," quod þe leude, & þe lace hondeled,  
"þis is þe bende of þis blame I bere [in] my nek,  
þis is þe lape & þe losse, þat I laȝt haue,  
2508 Of couardise & couetyse, þat I haf caȝt pare,  
þis is þe token of vn-trawþe, þat I am tan inne,  
& I mot nedeȝ hit were, wyle I may last ; [hit,  
For non may hyden his harme, bot vnhap ne may  
2512 For þer hit oneȝ is tachched, twynne wil hit neuer."  
þe kyng comforteȝ þe knyȝt, & alle þe court als,  
Laȝen loude þer-at, & luflyly acorden,  
þat lordes & ladiȝ, þat longed to þe Table, [haue,  
2516 Vche burne of þe broþer-hede a bauderyk schulde  
A bende, a belef hym aboute, of a bryȝt grene,  
& þat, for sake of þat segge, in swete to were.  
For þat watȝ acorded þe renoun of þe Rounde Table,  
2520 & he honoured þat hit hade, euer-more after,  
As hit is breued in þe best boke of romaunce.  
þus in Arthurus day þis aunter bitidde,  
þe Brutus bokees þer-of beres wyttensesse ;  
2524 Syþen Brutus, þe bolde burne, boȝed hider fyrst,  
After þe segge & þe asaute watȝ sesed at Troye,  
I-wysse ;  
Mony auntereȝ here bi-forne,  
2528 Haf fallen suche er þis :  
Now þat bere þe crown of þorne,  
He bryng us to his blysse ! AMEN.

## NOTES.

---

Page 1. l. 8 Ricchis turns, goes,

The king . . . . .

*Ricchis* his reynys and the Renke metys :

Girden to gedur with þere grete speires.—T. B. l. 1232.

P. 2. l. 37 *þis kyng lay at Camylot vpon kryst-masse.*

*Camalot*, in Malory's "Morte Arthure," is said to be the same as Winchester. Ritson supposes it to be *Caer-wynt*, in Monmouthshire, and afterwards confounded with *Caer-wynt*, or *Winchester*. But popular tradition here seems the best guide, which assigned the site of *Camalot* to the ruins of a castle on a hill, near the church of South Cadbury, in Somersetshire (Sir F. Madden).

P. 3. l. 65 *Nowel nayted o-newe, neuened ful ofte.*

Christmas celebrated anew, mentioned full often.

Sir F. Madden leaves the word *nayted* unexplained in his Glossary to "Syr Gawayne."

P. 5. l. 124 *syluener = sylueren*, i.e. silver dishes. 139 *lyndes = lendes*, loins. 142 *in his muckel*, in his greatness.

P. 6. l. 184 *Wat3 euesed al umbe-torne*—? was trimmed, all cut evenly around; *umbe-torne* may be an error for *vmbe-corne* = cut round.

P. 7. l. 216 *in gracios werkes*. Sir F. Madden reads *gracons* for *gracios*, and suggests *Greek* as the meaning of it.

P. 8. ll. 244-5 *As al were slypped vpon slepe so slaked hor lote3*  
in *hy3e*.

As all were fallen asleep so ceased their words  
in haste (suddenly).

Sir F. Madden reads *slaked horlote3*, instead of *slaked hor lote3*, which, according to his glossary, signifies drunken vagabonds. He evidently takes *horlote3* to be another (and a very uncommon) form of *harlote3* = *harlots*. But *harlot*, or vagabond, would be a very inappropriate term to apply to the noble *Knights of the Round Table*. Moreover, *slaked* never, I think, means drunken. The general sense of the verb *slake* is to let loose, lessen, cease.

Cf. lines 411-2, where *sloke*, another form of *slake*, occurs with a similar meaning: ——— *layt no fyrre* ;

*bot slokes.*

————— seek no further,  
but stop (cease).

Sir F. Madden suggests *blows* as the explanation of *slokes*. It is, however, a *verb* in the imperative mood.

P. 10. l. 286 *Brayn*. Mätzner suggests *brayn-wod*.

P. 10. l. 296 *barlay* = par loi. This word is exceedingly common in the T. Book (see l. 3391).

I bid you now, *barlay*, with besines at all

þat ye set you most soverainly my suster to gete.—T. B. l. 2780.

P. 13. l. 394 *siker*. Sir F. Madden reads *swer*.

P. 14. l. 440 *bluk*. Sir F. Madden suggests *blunk* (horse). I am inclined to keep to the reading of the MS., and explain *bluk* as = *bulk* = trunk. Cf. the use of the word *Blok* in "Early English Alliterative Poems," p. 100, l. 272.

P. 18. l. 558 *derue doel*, etc. = great grief. Sir F. Madden reads *derne*, i.e. secret, instead of *derue* (= *derf*). Cf. line 564.

P. 19. l. 577 *knaged*, fastened.

The braunches were borly, sum of bright gold,

With leuys full luffly, light of the same ;

With burions aboute bright to beholde ;

And fruit on yt fourmyt of fairest of shap,

Of mony kynd that was knyht, *knaged* aboute.—T. B. l. 4973.

P. 20. l. 629 *& ay quere hit is endelez*, etc.

And everywhere it is *endless*, etc.

Sir F. Madden reads *emdelez*, i.e. with equal sides.

P. 21. l. 652 *for-be* = *for-bi* = surpassing, beyond.

P. 22. l. 681 for *Hadet* read *Halet* = *haled* = exiled (?). See line 1049.

P. 26. l. 806 *avinant* = *avenaunt*, pleasantly. Sir F. Madden reads *amnant*.

P. 30. l. 954 *of*. Should we not read *on* (?)

P. 31. l. 957. *þat oper wyth a gorger watz gered ouer þe swyre.*

The *gorger* or *wimple* is stated first to have appeared in Edward the First's reign, and an example is found on the monument of Aveline, Countess of Lancaster, who died in 1269. From the poem, however, it would seem that the *gorger* was confined to elderly ladies (Sir F. Madden)

968

*More lykker-wys on to lyk,*

*Watz þat scho had on lode.*

A more pleasant one to like,

Was that (one) she had under her control.

P. 32. l. 888 *tayt* = lively, and hence pleasant, agreeable. 1015 in *vayres*, in purity.

P. 33. l. 1020 *dut* = *dunt* (?) = *dint* (?), referring to sword-sports. 1022 *sayn[t]* *lonez day*. This is the 27th of December, and the last of the feast. Sometimes the Christmas festivities were prolonged

to New Year's Day (Sir F. Madden). 1047 *derne dede* = secret deed. I would prefer to read *derue dede* = great deed. Cf. lines 558, 564.

- P. 34. l. 1053 *I wot in worlde*, etc. = *I not* (I know not) *in worlde*, etc.

1054 *I nolde, bot if I hit negh myzt on mozeres morne,*

*For alle þe londe in-wyth Logres*, etc.

I would not [delay to set out], unless I might approach it on New Year's morn, for all the lands within England, etc. 1074 *in spenne* = *in-space* = in the interval = meanwhile. See line 1503.

- P. 37. l. 1160 *slentyng of arwes*. Sir F. Madden reads *slentyng*.

"Of drawyn swordis *scentyng* to and fra,

The brycht mettale, and othir armouris seir,

Quharon the sonnys blenkis betis cleir,

Glitteris and schane, and vnder bemys brycht,

Castis ane new twynklyng or a lemand lycht."

(G. Douglas' *Æneid*, Vol. i., p. 421.)

- P. 41. l. 1281 *let lyk* = appeared pleased.

1283 *þaz I were burde bryztest, þe burde in mynde hade*, etc.

The sense requires us to read :

*þaz ho were burde bryztest, þe burne in mynde hade*, etc.

i.e., Though she were lady fairest, the knight in mind had, etc.

- P. 46. l. 1440 *Long sythen [seuered] for þe sounder þat wízt for-olde*  
Long since separated from the *sounder* or herd that fierce (one)  
for-aged (grew very old).

"Now to speke of the boore, the fyrste yere he is

A pygge of the *sounder* callyd, as haue I blys ;

The secunde yere an hogge, and soo shall he be,

And an hoggestere, whan he is of yeres thre ;

And when he is foure yere, a boor shall he be,

From the *sounder* of the swyne thenne departyth he ;

A synguler is he soo, for alone he woll go."

(Book of St. Alban's, ed. 1496, sig. d., i.)

- P. 47. l. 1476 *totes* = looks, toots.

Sho went up wightly by a walle syde.

To the toppe of a toure and *tot* ouer the water.—T. B. l. 862.

- P. 52. l. 1623 A verb [*lalede* = cried] seems wanting after *lorde*.

- P. 54. l. 1702 *fnasted*, breathed.

These balfull bestes were, as the boke tellus,

Full flaumond of fyre with *fnastyng* of logh.—T. B. l. 168.

- P. 55. l. 1710 *a strothe rande* = a rugged path. Cf. the phrases *tene greue*,

l. 1707 ; *roze greue*, l. 1898. 1729 *bi lag* = *be-lagh* (?) = below (?).

1719 *Thenne watz hit lif vpon list*, etc.

- Should we not read :

*Thenne watz hit list vpon lif*, etc.

i.e., Then was there joy in life, etc.

- P. 57. l. 1780 *lyf* = *lef* (?), beloved (one).



- P. 56. l. 1369 *He hatz kyrt þe knyzt so tozt.*  
 She has kissed the knight so courteous.  
 Sir F. Madden explains *tozt*, promptly. *Tozt* seems to be the same as the Northumbrian *toght* in the following extract from the "Morte Arthure":  
 "There come in at the fyrste cource, before the kyng seluene,  
 Bare beredyz that ware bryghte, burnyste with sylver,  
 Alle with *toghte* mene and *tourne* in togers fulle ryche."—(p. 15.)  
 The word *tourne* (well-behaved) still exists in *wan-ton*, the original meaning of which was ill-mannered, ill-bred.
- P. 61. l. 1909 *bray houndez* = *bray houndez*, i.e. fierce hounds.
- P. 64. l. 1995 *He hatz nere þat he sozt* = *He watz nere þat he sozt* = He was near to that which he sought.
- P. 69. l. 2160 *gedere; þe rabe* = takes the path or way.  
*þe skene; of þe scourtes skayned hym þozt.*
- 2167 The shadows of the hills appeared wild (desolate) to him.  
 Sir F. Madden reads *skayned*, of which he gives no explanation. *Skayned* = *skayfed*, seems to be the N. Prov. English *scafe*, wild. Scotch *schairie*, wild, mad. O.N. *skeifr*. Sw. *skef*, awry, distorted.
- P. 70. l. 2224 *rouge* = clattered.  
 2211 *Drede dotz me no lote* =  
 No noise shall cause me to dread (fear).
- P. 75. l. 2357 *& þer-for þat tappe ta þe.*  
 And therefore take thee that tap.  
*ta þe* = take thee. Sir F. Madden reads *tape* = *tuketh*. See page 14, l. 413, where *to þe* rhymes with *sothe*. We have no imperatives in *th* in this poem.
- P. 76. l. 2401 *We schyn reuel*, etc. Sir F. Madden reads *wasch yn reuel*. But *schyn* = shall. See Glossary to "Alliterative Poems."
- P. 79. l. 2474 *on-coolde* = *on-colde* = *coldly* = sorrowfully. 2489 *in-sounde* = *soundly*, well. Cf. *in-blande* = together; *in-lyche*, alike; *inmyddez*, amidst.



## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[For all words marked thus (\*) the reader is referred to the Glossary to Early English Alliterative Poems.]

- Abataylment, battlement, 790.  
 Abloy, an exclamation used in hunting; equivalent to On! on! 1174. O.Fr. *ablo*.  
 Abof, above, 73, 112, 153.  
 Abouen, above, 2217.  
 Achaufed, warmed, 883.  
 Acheue, to obtain, arrive, 1107, 1838.  
 Acheued, *pret.* 1081, 1857.  
 Acoles, embraces, 1936.  
 Acolen, *pl. pres.* embrace, 2472.  
 Acorde, 2406.  
 Adoun, down, 254.  
 Afyaunce, trust, confidence, 642.  
 After, afterwards, 218.  
 \*Aghlich, fearful, dreadful, 136.  
 Aker, field, plain, 1421. Sir F. Madden proposes to read *vch a* = every (each a).  
 Alce = also, also, likewise, 2492.  
 Alder, elder, 973.  
 Alder-truest, truest of all, 1486.  
 Alderes = elders, ancestors, 95.  
 Algate, every way, 141.  
 Al-hal-day, All-hallows day, 1st November, 536.  
 Al one, alone, 735, 2155. *Al hym one* = *Al his one*, by himself, 749, 1048.  
 A-losed, praised, 1512. See *Los*, *Lose*.  
 Als, } also, likewise, 270, 720,  
 Alse, } 933, 1627.  
 Al-same, together, 673.  
 Alther-grattest, greatest of all, 1441.  
 Aluisch = elvish, having preternatural power. A.S. *ælf*, *elf*, an elf, sprite, genius.  
 Amende, 898.  
 Amongez, amongst, 1361.  
 Amount, 1197.  
 Anamayld, enamelled, 169.  
 And = an, if, 1245, 1509, 1647.  
 Ane, one, 223.  
 A-nelede, attacked, worried, 723. Sir F. Madden renders it *approached*.  
 Angardez, arrogance, 681.  
 Anious, wearisome, sorrowful, fatiguing, 535. O.Fr. *anieux*, *anieuse*. Lat. *anxius*.  
 Another, otherwise, 1268.  
 Apendes, } appertains, belongs,  
 Apendez, } 623, 913.  
 Apert, openly, manifestly, 154, 2392.  
 Apparayl, 600, 1891.  
 Aray, 163.  
 Are, ere, before, previously, 239, 1632.  
 A-rered, retreated, 1902.

- Arewes, } arrows, 1160, 1455,  
 Arwes, } 1460.  
 Arwe, }  
 Armure, 586.  
 Arn, are (*pl. pres.*), 280, 1094.  
 Arsounes, } saddle-bows, 171, 602.  
 Arsoun, }  
 \*Arze, timid, fearful, 241.  
 Arze, *rb.* to wax timid, 2301.  
 Arzed, waxed timid, 1463, 2271.  
 Arze, waxest timid, 2277.  
 Asay, the point in the breast of  
 the buck, at which the hunter's  
 knife was inserted, to make trial  
 of the animal's fatness, 1328.  
 Asay, try, tempt, 2362.  
 \*Ascryed, shouted, 1153.  
 \*Askez, ashes, 2.  
 Askyng, request, 323, 349.  
 Asoyled, absolved, 1883.  
 Aspye, to discover, 1199.  
 Assaut, assault, 1.  
 As-swythe, quickly, 1400.  
 \*As-tit, } at once, suddenly, 31,  
 As-tyt, } 1210. See *Tit, Tite*.  
 At, for, 648; of, 703.  
 \*Athel, noble, good, 5, 171, 241,  
 904, 1654, 2466.  
 Ather = ayther, either, 1357.  
 \*Attle, *rb.* aim, design, purpose, 27.  
 Attled, *pret.* of attle, 2263.  
 \*At-waped, escaped, 1167. See  
*Wapped*.  
 Auen, }  
 Awen, } own, 10, 293, 836.  
 Aune, }  
 \*Auinant = avinaunt, avenaunt,  
 pleasantly, 806.  
 Aumayl, enamel, 236.  
 Auncian, *adj.* aged, 1001, 2463;  
*sb.* aged (one), 948.  
 \*Aunter, adventure, 27, 29, 2522.  
 Auntere, (*pl.*), 2527.  
 \*Auntered, ventured, 1516.  
 Ather, either, 88, 702.  
 Anters, portions of the nombles  
 of a deer, which lay near the  
 neck; a term used in wood-  
 craft, 1342.  
 "Then dresse the nombles, fyrst that  
 ye recke;  
 Downe the *auuncers* kerue, that cleuyth  
 to the neck;  
 And down wyth the bol-throte put  
 theym anone."  
 (Boke of St. Alban's, 1496, sig. d. iv.)  
 "One croke of the nombles lyeth  
 enermore  
 Under the throte-bolle of the beest  
 before,  
 That callyd is *auuncers*, whoso can  
 theym kenne."  
 (*Ibid.*, sig. e. i.)  
 Auentale, the open and moveable  
 portion of the helmet which  
 covered the mouth, for the pur-  
 pose of respiration, 608.  
 "He brayedex one a bacenett, bur-  
 neschte of syluer,  
 The beste that was in Basille, wyth  
 bordurs ryche;  
 The creste and the coronalle enclosed  
 so faire,  
 Wyth claspis of clere golde, couched  
 wyth stones;  
 The vesere, the *aventaille*, enarmede so  
 faire,  
 Voyde with owttyn vice, with wyn-  
 dowes of syluer."  
 (Morte Arthure, l. 910. E. E. T. S.)  
 "The vesere, the *aventaille*, his ves-  
 turis ryche,  
 Wyth the valyant blode was verrede  
 alle over."  
 (*Ibid.*, l. 2573.)  
 Early writers frequently use this  
 term for the whole front of the  
 helmet, including the visor. In  
 the prose French romances of  
 the Round Table, *ventaille* is a  
 distinct piece of armour, and  
 put on before the helmet.  
 Auenturus, adventurous, 93.  
 Auenturus, adventures, 95, 491.  
 Auinant, pleasantly, 806. See  
 T. B. l. 3982.  
 A-vyse, }  
 Awyse, } think, devise, 45, 1389.  
 Auyseed, viewed, observed, 771.

A-wharf, turned, whirled round, 2220. A.S. *a-hweorfan*, to bend (*pret. a-hwearf*).

Ax, 208.

Ay, ever, 26, 73, 128, 167, 893.

Ayled, 438.

Ay-quere, } everywhere, 599, 629,  
Ay-where, } 745, 800.

Ayther, either, 841, 939, 1307.

Azayn, } towards, 815, 971 ;  
Azaynes, } against, 1456, 1661.  
Azayne3, }

\*Azle3, fearless, 2335. See *Aghlich*.

Azt, azte, owned, possessed (the *pret. of awe*, to own, owe), 767, 843, 1775, 1941. See *Troy Book*, l. 378.

Bade, abode, tarried, 1699.

Baldly, boldly, 376.

\*Bale, harm, evil, grief, 2041, 2419.

Bale, belly, 1333. O.H.G. *balg*.

Bale3, bowels, 1333.

Bal3e, round or smooth, 2032, 2172.

"*Balhe* or *pleyn* (*balwe* or *playne*, P.) *Planus*." (Pr. Parv.)

Bande, 192.

Baner, 117.

Barayne, barren, applied to hinds not gravid, 1320.

Barbe, edge of an axe, 2310.

Barbez, points of arrows, 1457.

Barbican, out-work or tower of a castle, 793.

\*Bare, *adj.* mere, unconditional, 277. In l. 1141 it is applied to the moles or blasts of a horn, and seems to mean *short* or *without rechte* ; *adv.* 465 ; "*bare pre dayez*," 1066.

Barely, unconditionally, certainly, 548.

Baret, strife, contest, 21, 353, 2115 ; grief, 752.

Bargayn, 1112.

Barlay, Sir F. M. says, is apparently a corruption of the

French *par loi*, 296. Is it a corruption of the phrase, "by our lady," i.e. the Virgin Mary?

Barred, striped diagonally, 159.

Barres, diagonal stripes, 162.

Bastel-rouez, turreted or castellated roofs ; *rouez* = roofs.

Bate, debate, conflict, 1461. A.S. *bate*, contention.

Bauderyk, the strap by which the shield was suspended round the neck, 621 ; belt or lace, 2486. M.H.G. *balderich*.

Bawe, bow of a saddle(?), 435.

Bawe-men, bowmen, 1564.

Bay, round, 967. A.S. *bugan*, to bend.

Bay, } bay or baiting of a wild  
Baye, } boar, when attacked by  
dogs, 1450, 1564, 1582.

Bayed, baited, barked at, 1142, 1362, 1603.

Bayen (3*d pers. pl.*), bay, bark at, 1909.

\*Bayn, } prompt, ready, obedient,  
Bayne, } 1092, 2158.

Bayst, abashed, 37. Fr. *abaissier*.

Baythe, to grant (?), 327 · to consent, 1404, 1840.

Be, by, 652, 1216.

Beau, fair, 1222.

Be-com, went, 460.

Bedde, } offered, 1824, 1834, 2248.  
Bede, }

Beddez, bids, 1374.

Beddyng, 853.

Bede, bade, 1437, 2090.

Bede, offer, proffer, 374, 382, 2322. A.S. *beodan*, to offer.

Be-knewe, acknowledge.

Beknownen, acknowledged, 2391.

Belde, courage, valour, 650. A.S. *byld*.

Belo-chere, good company (*cheer*) or presence.

Belef, badge (?), 2486, 2517.

Belle3, bells, 195.

- Belt, 162.  
 Bende, band, bond, 2505, 2517.  
 Bende, bent, 305, 2224 ; put down, 2105.  
 Bene, to be, 141 ; are or will be, 1646.  
 \*Bene (another form of *bain*?), fair, well, 2402, 2475.  
 \*Bent, plain, field (or uplands?), 353, 1465, 1599, 2115, 2233, 2338 ; "*bent-field*," 1136.  
 Ber, beer, 129.  
 Ber, } bore, carried, 637, 1913.  
 Bere, }  
 Berdle, 280.  
 Berz, } hill, mount, 2172, 2178.  
 Berze, }  
 Best, beast, animal, 1436.  
 \*Bete, to kindle, 1367.  
 Beten, worked, embroidered, 78, 1833, 2028. Fr. *battu*.  
 Beuerage, drink, liquor, 1112, 1409.  
 Beuer-hwed = beaver-hued, colour of a beaver (?), 845.  
 Bide, } abide, endure, 374, 520,  
 Byde, } 1582, 2041.  
 Bide, }  
 Byde, } abides, awaits, 376.  
 Bifalle, 382.  
 Biforne, before, 123.  
 Big, bold, 354.  
 \*Biges, builds, 9.  
 \*Bigged, } built, inhabited, 20.  
 Bygged, }  
 \*Bigly, } loudly, 1141 ; deeply,  
 \*Bygly, } severely, 1162 ; boldly, 1584.  
 Bigrauen, engraved, 216.  
 Bi-grypte = be-gripped, grasped, 214.  
 Bihalden, } = beholden, indebted,  
 Biholde, } 1557, 1842.  
 Bi-hond, forthwith, 67.  
 Bihoues, 1065.  
 Bikende, commended, 596, 1982.  
 Biknowe, acknowledge, 2385.  
 Biknowe, acknowledges, 2495.  
 \*Biliue, } quickly, immediately,  
 Bilyue, } 132, 1128, 1136,  
 Bylyue, } 1171, 1715.  
 Bisemed, befitted, became, 622, 2035.  
 Biseme, = beseems, befits. 1612, 2191.  
 Bisides, } = besides, on the side,  
 Bisayde, } 76, 109, 856.  
 Bisied, agitated, 89.  
 Bisoyt, besought, 96.  
 Bitidde, befell, 2522.  
 Bitte, } the steel part of an axe,  
 Bytte, } 2224, 2310.  
 \*Bi-wyled, beguiled, 2425.  
 \*Blande, intermixed, blended ; phrase "*in blande*," together, 1205, 1931.  
 Blasoun, shield of arms, 828.  
 Blaunner, } a species of fur (?),  
 Blaunier, } 155, 573, 856, 1931.  
 Is it connected with *lawn*?—If so, it would signify a species of fine linen.  
 \*Bleaunt, } a robe or mantle (of  
 Bleeant, } finelinen), 879, 1928.  
 Blenched, receded, drew back, 1715.  
 Blende = blent, mingled, blend-  
 ed, 1361, 1610, 2371.  
 Blenk, to shine, 2315. Du. *blincken*, to shine, glitter. Ger. *blinken*, twinkle, glitter.  
 Blenked, shone, 799.  
 Blered, bleared, 963.  
 Blessing, 370.  
 \*Blonk, } a steed, literally, a  
 Blonkke, } white horse, 434, 785, 1581.  
 Blonkes, } horses, 1128, 1693.  
 Blonkkes, }  
 \*Blubred = foamed, blubbered, applied to a stream of water, 2174.  
 Bluk = trunk, 440.  
 Blunder, confusion, trouble, 18.  
 \*Blunk, steed, 440. See *Blonk*.  
 \*Blusch, sb. look, 520.

- usched, looked, 650, 793.  
 asschande = blushing, glittering, 1819.  
 w, } blew, 1141, 1362.  
 we, }  
 lwe, blue, 1928.  
 Blycande, } shining, glittering,  
 lykkande, } 305, 2485.  
 lykked, shone, glistened, 429.  
 Blynne, cease, 2322.  
 Blysse, fortune, prosperity, 18.  
 Blype, gay, bright, 155.  
 \*Bobbaunce, boast, 9.  
 Bobbe, branch, 206.  
 Bode, bidding, proffer, 852, 1824.  
 A.S. *bod*.  
 \*Bode, abode, 785, 1564.  
 \*Boden, *pass. part.* prayed, asked, 327. A.S. *beodan* (*p.p.* *boden*, to bid, offer.  
 Bolde, *sb.* bold (one), 21.  
 \*Bole, trunk of a tree, 766.  
 \*Bolne, to swell, 512.  
 Bonchef, gaiety (or perhaps innocence, purity), 1764.  
 \*Bone, prayer, request, 327.  
 Bone-hostel, lodging, 776.  
 \*Bonk, bank, height, 511, 700, 710, 785, 1571.  
 \*Bonkkes, } heights, 14, 1562,  
 Bonkkez, } 2077.  
 Bord, }  
 Borde, } table, 481.  
 Borde, border, 610; *bordes* (*pl.*), 159.  
 \*Bordez = bourdez (?), jests (?), 1954.  
 \*Borelych = burly, huge, strong, 766, 2148, 2224.  
 \*Borne = bourn, stream, 731, 1570, 2174.  
 Bornyst, }  
 Burnyst, } burnished, 212, 582.  
 \*Borz, }  
 Borze, } = burgh, city, castle, 2,  
 Burz, } 9, 259, 843, 1092.  
 Burze, }  
 Bot-if, unless, 1782.  
 Bot, } bit, wounded, pierced, 426,  
 Bote, } 1162, 1562.  
 Bothem, bottom, 2145.  
 Botounz, buttons, 220.  
 \*Boun, } ready, prompt, obedient,  
 Boune, } 548, 852, 1311, 1693.  
 Bour, chamber, 853, 1519.  
 \*Bourde, sport, joke, 1409.  
 Bourdez, jokes, 1212.  
 Bourled, joked, 1217.  
 Bourdyng, *sb.* joke, sport, 1404.  
 Bout, }  
 Boute, } without, 361, 1285, 1444.  
 \*Boze, to move, rise, go, 344, 1220.  
 Bozed (*pret.* of *boze*), 481, 550, 1189, 2524.  
 Bozen (*pres. pl.* of *boze*), 434, 1311, 2077.  
 \*Bozes, goes, 2178.  
 Bozez, boughs, 765, 2077.  
 Brace, armour for the arms, 582.  
 Braches, } hounds, 1142, 1563,  
 Brachez, } 1610. *Brache* is said to signify originally a bitch hound—the feminine of *rache*, a foot-scenting hound (Jam.).  
 Brachetes, hounds, 1603.  
 Brad, roasted, 891. A.S. *brædan*, to roast (*pret.* *brædde*; *p.p.* *ge-bræd*).  
 \*Bradde, extended, 1928. See *Braide*.  
 \*Braides, } draws, 621, 1584,  
 Braydes, } 1609, 1901.  
 Braydez, }  
 Brawden, woven, 177, 580.  
 Brawen, } = *brawn*, or flesh of a  
 Brawne, } wild boar, 1611, 1631.  
 Bray, an error for *brath*, bold (?), 1909.  
 \*Brayde, started, 429; threw, 2377; drew, 1399; drawn, thrown, 2069.  
 Brayden, embroidered, 220, 1883.  
 Brayn-wod, mad, violent, 286, 1461, 1580.

- Bredden (*pl. pret.*) = *bred*, flourished, 21.  
 \*Bredez, bounds, limits, 2071. A.S. *brerd*.  
 \*Brem, } fierce, bold, 1142, 1155,  
 Breme, } 1580, 2200; loud,  
 shrill, 1601; rugged, 2145.  
 \*Breme, }  
 Bremly, } quickly, boldly, 779,  
 Bremely, } 781; fiercely, 509,  
 Bremlych, } 1598, 2233, 2319.  
 Brende, } burnt, burnished, 2,  
 Brenned, } 195, 832, 875, 2165.  
 Brennez, burns, 1609.  
 \*Brent, high, 2165.  
 \*Bresed, rough, 305.  
 Brether, brethren, 39.  
 \*Breue, tell, inform, speak, 1393, 1488.  
 Breued, marked, 1436; written, 2521.  
 Britned, broken or cut in pieces, 2, 680, 1339.  
 Britnez, breaks, cuts, 1611. A.S. *bryt-an*, to break.  
 Bronde, } sword, 561, 588, 828,  
 Bront, } 1584.  
 Brondez = brands, embers, 2.  
 \*Brothe, angry, fierce, 2233.  
 \*Brothely, angrily, violently, 2377.  
 Brother-hede, brotherhood, 2516.  
 Broun, *sb.* brown (deer), 1162.  
 Browe, brow, 1457.  
 Brozes, }  
 Brozez, } brows, 305, 961.  
 Bruny, cuirass, 861, 2012, 2018. A.S. *byrne*.  
 Brusten, burst, 1166.  
 Bryddes, }  
 Bryddez, } birds, 166, 509, 746.  
 Brygge, bridge, 779, 781.  
 \*Brymme, flood, river, 2172.  
 Bugle, 1136.  
 Bult, built, 25.  
 \*Bur, blow, 290, 374, 548, 2322; force, 2261.  
 \*Burde, lady, 613, 752, 961.  
 Burdes, }  
 Burdez, } ladies, 942, 1232, 1373.  
 \*Burde, ought, behoved, 2278, 2428.  
 \*Burn, } man, knight, noble, 20,  
 Burne, } 73, 337.  
 Burnes, }  
 Burnez, } men, 259, 272, 481.  
 Burnyst, 212.  
 \*Busk, array, 1220; prepare, 2248, 2284.  
 Busked, went, 1411; prepared, 1693.  
 Busken (*pl. pres.*), prepare, 509, 1128.  
 Buskes, }  
 Buskez, } goes, 1136, 1448, 2476.  
 Busk, bush, 182.  
 Buskez, bushes, 1437.  
 Busy, to be active, 1066.  
 Busyly, 68.  
 Buttokez, 967.  
 Bycome, became, 6.  
 Bycomes, becomes, befits, 471.  
 Byforne, before, 1375, 1577.  
 Byhode, behoved, 717.  
 Bykende, commended, 569, 1982.  
 Bykennen, commend, 1307.  
 Bylde, 509.  
 Byled, boiled, 2082.  
 Bytoknyng, token, 626.  
 Cach, to catch, take, acquire, 133; to go, 1794.  
 Cacheres = catchers, hunters, 1139.  
 Cachez (*pres. tense of cach*), 368, 2175.  
 Can (*auxiliary vb. of past tense*), 340, 1042.  
 Capados, hood, or close cap, from the Fr. *cap-à-dos*, 186, 572.  
 \*Caple, horse, 2175.  
 Carande, sorrowing, anxious, 674, 750.  
 Care, grief, concern, 1979, 2379.  
 Carnelez, battlements, embrasures, 801.

- Caroles, 43.  
 Carp, speech, conversation.  
 Carp, } to say, tell, speak, 263,  
 Karp, } 696, 704.  
 Carped, told, spoke, 1088.  
 Carppez, tells, speaks, 377, 1979.  
 \*Caryez = cayrez, goes, 2120.  
 Cast, to speak, address, 249.  
 Castes, deeds, manners, 1295. See  
*Costes*.  
 Caeloun; = cauelacioun; dis-  
 putes, 683, 2275. O.Fr. *cavel-*  
*lation*.  
 Cemmed = cammed (?), folded,  
 twisted, 188. O.E. *cam*, bent,  
 crooked.  
 Cerce, circle around the helmet,  
 615.  
 Chaffer, merchandise, 1647, 1939.  
 Chambre, 48.  
 Chaplayne, 930.  
 Charcole, 875.  
 Charg, matter, 1940.  
 Charge, *vb.* 863.  
 Chargeaunt, dangerous (?), 1604.  
 \*Charre, return, 1678.  
 Charred, led, turned, 850, 1143.  
 Charres, business; task, 1674.  
 Chastysed, 1143.  
 Chauncely, accidentally, 778.  
 Chaunsel, 946.  
 Chauntre, religious service, 63.  
 O.F. *chanterie*.  
 Chefly, } speedily (?), 850, 883,  
 Cheuely, } 978, 1940.  
 Chek, fortune, 1107, 1857.  
 Chekke, ill fortune (?), 2195.  
 Chemne (= chimney), fire place,  
 978.  
 Chepe, } bargain, terms of buying  
 Chepez, } or selling, or goods  
 sold, 1939, 1940, 1941.  
 Chepen, to bargain, 1271.  
 \*Chor, } countenance, behaviour,  
 Chere, } spirits, 562, 711, 883,  
 1745, 2169, 2496; entertain-  
 ment, 1259.  
 Ches (= chose), perceived, dis-  
 cerned, 798, 946.  
 \*Cheue, obtain, 1271; to arrive,  
 1676.  
 Cheued, obtained, 1390; came, 63.  
 Cheuicaunce, } booty, gain, 1390,  
 Cheuisaunce, } 1406, 1678, 1939.  
 Cheuysaunce, } O.Fr. *cheuissance*.  
 Cheyer, chair, 875.  
 Child-gered, of childish manners,  
 86.  
 \*Chorle, churl, 2107.  
 Chosen (the gate), took the way  
 930.  
 "Towardes Chartris they *chese* these  
*cheualrous knyghttez*."  
 (Morte Arthure, ed. Halliwell, p. 136.)  
 Chylder, children, 280.  
 Chymbled, folded (?), 958. Is it  
 connected with Eng. *chymb*,  
 from Du. *kimme*, rim or edge  
 of a vase?  
 Clad, covered, 885.  
 Clamberande, clustering, 1722.  
 Clambered, clustered, joined to-  
 gether, 801.  
 Clanly, wholly, 393.  
 Clanness, chastity, purity, 653.  
 Clatterande (= clattering), bub-  
 bling, 731.  
 Clattered, resounded, 1722.  
 Clayme, 293.  
 Clene, fair, 163; wholly, 1298.  
 Clengez (= clings), contracts, or  
 causes to shrink with cold, 505,  
 2078.  
 Clenged, 1694, *pret.* of *Clenge*.  
 Clepes, calls, 1310.  
 Cler, } fine, fair, bright, beautiful,  
 Clere, } noble, 631, 942, 954,  
 1489.  
 Clergye, erudition, 2447.  
 Clomben, climbed, 2078.  
 Close, 186.  
 Closet, 934.  
 Cloyster, 804.  
 \*Cofly, quickly, 2011.



- Colen, to cool, assuage, 1253.  
 Com, } came (*pl. comen*), 116,  
 Come, } 824, 942, 1004.  
 Comaunde3 (*imp.*), commend,  
 2411.  
 Comly, } *adj.* comely, fair, 469,  
 Comlych, } 539; used substan-  
 tively, 674, 1755; used adverb-  
 ially, 648, 1307, 1629, 1794.  
 Comlyly, courteously, 974, 1118,  
 1389.  
 Comloker, comelier, 869.  
 Comlokest, most comely, 52, 81,  
 767.  
 Compass, form, stature, 944.  
 Compast, 1196.  
 Company, 556, 1011.  
 Con, }  
 Conne, } can, 2455.  
 Con, } an auxiliary vb. (of the  
 Conne, } past tense), 230, 274,  
 362, 841, 993, 1206.  
 Connez, knows, 1267, 1483.  
 Conable (=convenable), famous,  
 or accomplished, 2450. O.Fr.  
*covinable*.  
 Concience, 1196.  
 Conquestes, 311.  
 Conueyed, 596.  
 Conysaunce, badge, cognisance,  
 2026.  
 \*Coprounes, capitals, 797.  
 Corbeles, raven's, 1355.  
 Corner, 1185.  
 Cors, body, 1297.  
 Cors, course, 116.  
 Corsedest, most cursed, 2196.  
 Corsour, 1583.  
 Cortays, } courteous, 276, 467,  
 Cortayse, } 539.  
 Cortaysy, } courtesy, 247, 263  
 Cortaysye, } 1300.  
 Cortaysly, courteously, 775, 903.  
 Cortyn, curtain, 854, 1185.  
 Cortyned, 1181.  
 Coruon, carved, 797.  
 Cosse, kiss, 1300.  
 Cosses, } kisses, 2351, 2360.  
 Cossez, }  
 Cost, manner, business, 546.  
 \*Costes, } manners, qualities, vir-  
 Costez, } tues, 944, 1272, 1483,  
 1489, 2360, 2495; labours, 750.  
 Icel. *kostr*, habits, character,  
 conditions. Ger. *kunst*, art.  
 Costez, coasts, 1696.  
 Cosyn, 372.  
 Cote, 152, 335.  
 Cothe, quoth, 776.  
 Coundue, to conduct, guide, 1972.  
 O.Fr. *conduire*.  
 Coundutes, songs, 1655. O.Fr.  
*conduis*.  
 Counseyl, 557.  
 Countenaunce, custom, 100, 1490.  
 Couples, 1147.  
 Cource, 135.  
 Couth, } (=could), knew, 45,  
 Couthe, } 1125, 1139, 1389,  
 Cowthe, } 1486; known, 1490.  
 Couthly, familiarly, 937.  
 Couenaunt, 393.  
 Couertor, } cover or trapping of  
 Couertour, } a horse, 602; cano-  
 py of a bed, 1181.  
 Couertorez, canopies, 855.  
 Cowpled, 1139.  
 Cowters, pieces of plate for the  
 elbows, 583. Fr. *coudière*, la  
 partie qui couvre la *coude*.  
 Coynt, } curious, quaint, 877;  
 Koynt, } skilful, cunning, 1525.  
 Coyntly, }  
 Coyntlych, } cunningly, 578, 934,  
 Koyntly, } 2413.  
 Cozed = coughed, 307.  
 Crabbed, 502.  
 Crafty, skilfully made, 572.  
 Crakkande, resounding, loud, 1166.  
 Crakkyng, blast, blowing, 116.  
 Cresped, crisped, 188.  
 Crathayn, craven, coward, 1773.  
 "Beum thou cownt *cradowm* recry-  
 and." (G. Douglas, Vol. ii. p. 673.)

Crest, top of a rock, 731.  
 Creuisse, fissure, cavity, 2183.  
 Criande, crying, 1088.  
 Croked, bent aside, 653.  
 Cropore, } crupper, 168, 602.  
 Cropure, }  
 Croys, cross, 643.  
 Crystenmas, Christmas, 985.  
 Cummen, come, 60, 62.  
  
 Dabate = debate, strife, 2041.  
 Dalt, dealt, fared, passed away  
 time, 452, 1664, 2449.  
 Dalten (*pret. pl.*), 1114.  
 Daly, to dally, 1253.  
 Dallyaunce, 1012.  
 Dar, dare, 287.  
 \*Dare, to manifest fear, tremble,  
 315, 2258.  
 Daunse, 1024.  
 Daunsyng, 47.  
 \*Dawed (= dowed), availed, pro-  
 fited, 1805.  
 Daylyeden, dallied, 1114.  
 Daynté, 121, 1260.  
 Debate, 68.  
 Debetande, debating, 2179.  
 \*Debonerte, good manners, polite-  
 ness.  
 \*Dece, } dais or table of state, 61,  
 Des, } 75, 222, 250.  
 Dese, }  
 Defence, caution, 1282.  
 Defende, forbidden, 1156.  
 Dele, to deal (a blow), 295, 560;  
 to give, bestow, 1085, 2192;  
 to partake, 1968.  
 Dele, the devil, 2188.  
 Delen (*pres. pl.*), deal, 1266.  
 Deles, deals, 397.  
 Delful, doleful, 560.  
 Deliuier, active, nimble, 2343.  
 Deliuierly, quickly, 2009.  
 Delyuer, 851.  
 Demay, dismay, 470.  
 \*Deme, to judge, deem, 246, 1322,  
 2183.

Demed, esteemed, judged, deter-  
 mined, 240, 1089, 1668.  
 Demen (*pres. pl.*), judge, think  
 fit, 1082, 1529.  
 Denaye, deny, refuse, 1497.  
 Denayed, refused, 1493.  
 Dencz, Danish, 2223.  
 Depaynt, } deposited, 620, 645.  
 Depaynted, }  
 Departed, severed, divided, 1335.  
 Deprece, release, 1219.  
 Depreced, } vanquished, bore  
 Depressed, } down, 6, 1770.  
 Dere, deer, beasts of chase, 1151,  
 1322.  
 Dere, joyful, delightful, 92, 1012,  
 1026, 1047; worthy, 47; pre-  
 cious, costly, 75, 121, 193, 571.  
 Used substantively = worthy,  
 noble, honourable (one), 678,  
 928.  
 \*Dere, hurtful, injurious, 564.  
 Dered, injured, 1460.  
 Derely, joyfully, honourably, 817,  
 1031, 1253, 1327, 1559.  
 \*Derf, strong, stern, severe, active,  
 564, 1000, 1233, 1492.  
 \*Derfly, } quickly, suddenly,  
 Deruely, } firmly, 1183, 2334.  
 \*Derne, secret, privy, 1012, 1047.  
 Dernly, secretly, silently, 1188,  
 2334. Should we not read *de-*  
*ruly*, *i.e.*, quickly, smartly?  
 Derrest, noblest, 445, 483.  
 \*Derue = derf, strong, great,  
 558.  
 Derworthly, honourably, 114.  
 Destines, 564.  
 Destyne, 996.  
 Deve, to confound, 1286. A.S.  
*deafian*. Sc. *deve*, to confound,  
 stupefy.  
 Deuise, 92.  
 Deuys, 617.  
 Dew, 519.  
 Deze, die, 996.  
 Diamaauntez, diamonds, 617.

- Digne, } worthy, 1316.  
 Dyngne, }  
 \*Dille, dull, foolish, 1529.  
 Disceuer, discover, 1862.  
 Discrye, describe, 81.  
 Diskouere, 418.  
 Dismay, 336.  
 Display, 955.  
 Displese, 2439.  
 Dispoyle, undress, 860.  
 Disserrue, deserve, 452.  
 Disstrye3, destroys, 2375.  
 \*Dit, fastened, 1233.  
 \*Dijt, pronounce, make, 295 ;  
     prepared, dressed, placed, made  
     ready, 114, 678, 994, 1559,  
     1884, 1223, 1689.  
 Do, place, lay, 1492 ; "*dos her*  
*forth*" = goes out, 1308 ; *dos*  
*(imp.)*, do thou, 1533.  
 \*Doel, } sorrow, torment, 558.  
 Dole, }  
 Dok, tail, 193. O.N. *dockr*.  
 \*Dole, part, 719.  
 \*Dom, } judgment, sentence, 295,  
 Dome, } 1216, 1968.  
 Donkande, moistening, damp ;  
     from *donk*, *dank*, moist, wet.  
 Doser, back of a seat, 478.  
 \*Doted, became foolish, demented,  
     1151, 1956.  
 Dot3, does, 2211.  
 Double, } 61, 483.  
 Double, }  
 Doute, fear, 246, 442.  
 Douteles, 725.  
 \*Douth, } people, nobles, 61,  
 Douth, } 1365, 1415, 1956.  
 Dowelle, dwell, 566.  
 Draueled, slumbered fitfully, 1750.  
     A.S. *dréfan*, to disturb, trouble.  
     "*Of dreftynge and dremys quhat dow*  
     *(avails) it to endite ?*"  
     (G. Douglas, vol. i., p. 447.)  
 Draz3, draws, 1031.  
 Drazt, drawbridge, 817.  
 Drechch, trouble, hurt (*not* delay,  
     as the word sometimes signifies),  
     1972. A.S. *drécan*, to trouble,  
     vex, oppress. See Glossary to  
     Hampole.  
 Dredles, void of dread, 2334.  
 \*Dreped, put to death, 725.  
 Dres, to prepare, go, 474.  
 Dressed, placed, set, 75, 2033 ;  
     went, rose, 1415, 2009.  
 Dresses, } prepares, rises, 417,  
 Dressez, } 445, 566.  
 \*Drez, fierce, bold, 1750 ; used  
     adverbially, 2263.  
 \*Drezly, vigorously, 1026.  
 Driuande, driving, advancing  
     quickly, 222.  
 Drof, drove, rushed, passed, 786,  
     1151, 1176.  
 Dronken (*pret. pl.*), drank, 1025,  
     1668.  
 Drope, 519.  
 Drouping, } uneasy, fitful slum-  
 Drouping, } ber, 1748, 1750.  
     We often meet in O. E. works  
     with the phrase "*to drowpe*  
     and dare" = to be troubled  
     and affrighted. O.N. *driûpr*,  
     troubled. See *Drove* in Glossary  
     to "Alliterative Poems."  
 Dro3, } drew, 1188, 1463.  
 Dro3en, }  
 Dro3t = drought, dryness, 523.  
 \*Drury, } amour, love, love-token,  
 Drwrye, } 1507, 1517, 1805,  
     2033, 2449.  
 \*Dry3e, endure, suffer, 202, 560.  
 \*Dry3e, stern, immovable, 335 ;  
     enduring, tough, 724, 1460.  
 \*Dry3tyn, the Lord, 724, 996, 1548.  
 \*Dubbed, ornamented, dressed,  
     clad, 75, 193, 571.  
 Dublet, 571.  
 \*Dulful, doleful, grievous, 1517.  
 \*Dunt, } blow, *dint*, 452, 1286.  
 Dunte, }  
 Dust, 523.  
 Dut, mirth (?), 1020.

- Dut, } doubted, feared, 222,  
 Dutte, } 784, 2257.  
 Duzty (=doughty), 724.  
 \*Dyn, noise, revelry, 47.  
 Dynne3 (=dynges?), strikes, 2105.  
 \*Dynt, blow, stroke, 315, 560,  
 2105.  
 Dynte3, } blows, 336, 202, 1460.  
 Dyntte3, }  
 Dy3t. See *Dizt*.  
 Efte, afterwards, 641, 700, 788,  
 2388.  
 Eft-sones3, } forthwith, there-  
 Eft-sones3, } after, 1640, 2417.  
 \*Egge, edge, 212. Used for the  
 axe itself, 2392.  
 Eke, also, 90.  
 Elbowe, 184.  
 \*Elde, age, 844, 1520.  
 Elle3, if that, 295.  
 Em, }  
 Eme, } uncle, 356, 543. A.S. *eám*.  
 \*Enbaned, supported (?), 790.  
 Enbelyse, to embellish, 1034.  
 Enbrauded, } embroidered, adorn-  
 Enbrawdred, } ed, 78, 166, 606,  
 Enbrawdren, } 856.  
 Enclyne, 340.  
 Endelez, endless, 629.  
 Endite, put (to death), 1600.  
 Enfoubled, wrapt up, 959.  
 Enker, bright (applied to colour),  
 150, 2477. The same root  
 enters into O.E. and Sc. *enkerly*,  
 quickly, vigorously.  
 \*Ennourned, } adorned, 634,  
 Ennurned, } 2027.  
 Enquest, inquiry, 1056.  
 Entayled, interwoven, embroider-  
 ed, 612.  
 Enterlude3, 472.  
 Entyse, acquire, 2436.  
 Er, ere, before, previously, 92,  
 197, 712.  
 Erber, the conduit leading to the  
 stomach; a hunting term, 1330.  
 \*Erd, } earth, 27, 140, 881.  
 Erde, }  
 \*Erdez, lands, 1808.  
 Erly, 567.  
 \*Ernd, } errand, 257, 559, 803.  
 Ernde, }  
 Ermyn, 881.  
 Etayn, giant, 140. A.S. *eóten*,  
 a giant, monster.  
 Etayne3, giants, 723.  
 Ethe, ask, 379, 2467.  
 Ethe, easy, 676.  
 Ette, ate, 113.  
 Euenden = *evenend*, evenly (?),  
 perpendicularly (?), 1345.  
 Euensong, 932.  
 Euesed, entangled, clotted (?), 184.  
 Sir F. Madden suggests *covered*;  
 but (?) bordered, from A.S. *efese*,  
 rim, border.  
 Eue3, borders, *eaves*, 1178. A.S.  
*efese*, brim, bank.  
 Expoun (=expound), describe,  
 explain, 209, 1506.  
 Fade, hostile, 149. Isl. *fæd*=  
 feud, enmity. S. Saxon, *ifwied*.  
 O.E. *ivet*.  
 Fale, fallow (?), grassy (?), 728.  
 Falle, befall, happen, 483.  
 Falled, belonged, appertained, 2243.  
 Falle3, befalls, appertains, 1303,  
 1358, 2327.  
 Faltered, 430.  
 \*Fange, take, receive, 391.  
 \*Fannand, waving, flowing, 181.  
 Fantoum, phantom, illusion, 240.  
 \*Farand, goodly, 101.  
 Fare, unusual display, entertain-  
 ment, 537; behaviour, conduct,  
 1116, 2386; course, path, way,  
 694, 1703, 1793; proceeding,  
 adventure, 2494; business, 409.  
 Faren, gone, 1231.  
 \*Fare3, goes, journeys, 699; (*imp.*)  
 go ye, 2149.  
 Faut, fault, 1551, 2435.

- Faultles, } faultless, 640, 1761.  
 Faultle3, }  
 Fawne, to caress, 1919.  
 Fawty, faulty, 2382, 2386.  
 \*Fax, }  
 Faxe, } hair, 181.  
 Fayly, to fail, 1067.  
 Fayle3, fails, 278, 455.  
 Fayn, glad, joyful, 388, 840, 1067.  
 Fayntyse, deceit, cowardice, 2435.  
 O.Fr. *feintise*, *faintise*, from  
*feindre*, *faindre*.  
 Fayry3e, enchantment, magic, 240.  
 "It was of *fayry*, as the people semed."  
 (Chaucer's *Squieres Tale*).  
 Faythely, certainly, 1636.  
 Feble, 354.  
 Feersly, 329.  
 Fee3, 1622.  
 Felazes, fellows, 1702.  
 Felazschyp, fellowship, 652.  
 Felde, fold, embrace, 841, 890.  
 Cf. *feme* = foam.  
 \*Fele, } many, 122, 239, 428,  
 Felle, } 1566.  
 Fele-fold, manifold, 1545.  
 Fele-kyn, many kinds of, 890.  
 Feler, more, greater, 1391.  
 Felle, hill, moor, 723. O.N. *fiáll*.  
 Felle, befell, 1588.  
 Felle, skin, hide, 943, 1359, 1944.  
 \*Felle, fierce, bold, furious, 291,  
 847, 874. Used substantively,  
 1585.  
 Fellely, } fiercely, cruelly, boldly,  
 Felly, } 2302.  
 Felle3, skins, 880, 1737.  
 Femed, foamed, 1572.  
 \*Ferde, fear, 2130, 2272.  
 Ferde, ferden = proceeded, acted,  
 149, 703, 1282, 1433. See *Fare*.  
 Ferde, feared, afraid, 1295, 1588,  
 2382.  
 Fere, undaunted; literally, whole,  
 sound, 103. Dan. *for*. O.N. *færr*.  
 \*Fere, a companion, 676, 695, 915,  
 2411; *in-fere* = together, in  
 company, 267.  
 Fere3, companions, 594.  
 \*Ferk, to proceed, ride, 1072,  
 1973.  
 Ferked, ran, 2173.  
 \*Ferke3, } rides, rises, 173, 2013.  
 Ferkke3, }  
 \*Ferly, wonder, marvel, 716,  
 2414.  
 Ferly, } wondrous, wondrously,  
 Ferlyly, } 388, 741, 766, 1694,  
 2494.  
 Ferlyes, marvels, 23.  
 Fermysoun, a hunting term, ap-  
 plied to the time in which the  
 male deer were *closed*, or not  
 allowed to be killed, 1156.  
 Ferre, afar, 1093.  
 Fersly, brightly, 832.  
 Ferum, afar. See *On-ferum*.  
 Fest, secured, fastened, 2347.  
 Festned, fastened, 1783.  
 Feted, behaved, acted, 1282.  
 \*Fetled, joined, 656.  
 Fetly, featly, 1758.  
 Fette, fetched, brought, 1084.  
 Fetures, 145.  
 Feye, dead, 1067. Sc. *fey*. Icel.  
*feigr*, fated.  
 "It is playnly your porpos to put you  
 to dethe,  
 With such feyndes to fight till ye *fay*  
 worthe."—(T. B. I. 598.)  
 Fe3t, fight, 717.  
 Fe3tyng, fighting, 267.  
 \*Fildore, gold thread, 189.  
 Fire = fere (?) = fear, 1304.  
 Firre, } further, moreover, 378,  
 Fyrre, } 411, 1105, 2121.  
 First, early, youthful, 54.  
 Flat, ground, field, 507.  
 Fla3, } flew, fled, 459, 2274,  
 Flaze, } 2276.  
 Flet, } floor (originally applied  
 Flette, } to the *hall* itself. See  
 Romance of Alexander, ed.  
 Stevenson, I. 821), 294, 568,  
 832, 859, 1374, 1653, 1925.  
 A.S. *flett*.

- \*Flete, fletted, flew, 1566.  
 Flone, arrow, 1161. A.S. *flán*.  
 Flone3, arrows, 1566.  
 Florsche, flood, pool, marsh, 1430.  
 O. Sc. *flouss*. "Plasche or *flasche*, where reyne watyr stondythe, torrens, lacuna."  
 (Prompt. Parv.)  
 Floten, removed, 714.  
 Flynt, 459.  
 Fly3e, fly, 524.  
 Flyzes, flies, 166.  
 Fnast, to breathe hard, 1587.  
 A.S. *fnæst*, a puff, blast.  
 "Hwang grim him hauede faste bounden,  
 And sipen in an eld cloth wnden  
 A keuel of clutes, ful, unwraste,  
 Þat he ne mouthe speke ne fnaste,  
 Hwere he wolde him bere or lede."  
 (Havelok, ed. Skeat, l. 548.)  
 Fnasted, breathed hard, 1702.  
 Foch, fetch, 396.  
 Fochchez, fetches, 1961.  
 \*Fold, } earth, 23, 196, 396, 422.  
 Folde, }  
 Folden, folded, 959; plighted,  
 1783.  
 Foldez (*imp.*), grant thou, 359;  
 (*pres.*) accords, 499.  
 Fole, foal, 173, 459.  
 Fole, fool, 1545.  
 Foly, foolishly, 324.  
 Folzande = following, suitable,  
 145, 859.  
 Folzed, followed, 1895.  
 Folzes, follows, 1164.  
 \*Fonde, to try, endeavour, 291,  
 565, 986; might find, 1875.  
 Fondet, } attempted, proved,  
 Founded, } 1549, 2125, 2130.  
 \*Fonge, to take, receive, 816,  
 1556, 1622; (*pret.*) 646, 1315,  
 1363.  
 Fonge, } (*p.p.*) taken, 919, 1315.  
 Fonged, }  
 Fongen, took, 1265.  
 Foo = Northumbrian *fa*, bad, vile,  
 hence rugged, rough, 1430,  
 2326. A.S. *fáh*, hostile. Sir F.  
 Madden suggests *large, largely*.  
 In the *Cursor Mundi*, vol. 48,  
*fa* is applied to clothing.  
 For, because, 258; before (?), 965,  
 1822.  
 For-be = for-by, surpassing, 652.  
 Fordez, fords, 699.  
 Forfaren, destroyed, 1895.  
 \*Forferde, destroyed, killed, 1617.  
 Forlancyng, cutting off, 1334.  
 Forlondez, 699.  
 \*Forme, beginning, 499; foremost,  
 2373.  
 Forne, formerly (?), 2422.  
 For-olde, became very old, 1440.  
 Forsake, to deny, 475.  
 Forsness, vigour, strength, 646.  
 Forsoke, denied, 1826.  
 \*Forst, frost, 1694.  
 \*Forth, }  
 Forthe, } passage, ford, stream,  
 For3, } 1585, 1617, 2173.  
 \*For-thi, } therefore, 27, 240, 283,  
 For-thy, } 455.  
 \*Forward, } covenant, 1105,  
 Forwarde, } 1395, 1636.  
 Forwardez (*pl.*), covenants, 378,  
 409, 1405.  
 For-wondred, astonished, 1660.  
 For3ate, forgot, 1472.  
 For-3elde, requite, 839, 1279,  
 1535. See *3elite*.  
 Fote3, feet, 574.  
 Fotte, fetch, 451.  
 Founded, came, 267.  
 \*Foundez, goes, 1585, 2229.  
 Fourchez, a hunting term, applied  
 to the *forks* or *haunches* of the  
 deer, 1357.  
 "And after the ragge-boon kytteth  
 euyn also,  
 The *forchis* and the sydes euyn by-  
 twene,  
 And loke that your knyues ay whettyd  
 bene;  
 Thenne turne vp the *forchis*, and frote  
 theym wyth blood,  
 Fortosaue grece; so doo men of good."  
 (Boke of St. Alban's, 1496.)

- Formed**, turned aside, 428.  
**\*Forsaken**, plenty, 122.  
**\*Frist**, to ask seek, 409; (1st  
**Frist**, to ask seek, 279.  
**Frist**, asked, 324, 391, 1395;  
**Fristed**, to be disappointed, 1679.  
**Frist**, asked, 455; tries, 503.  
**Frankness**, frankness, liberal.  
**Frankness**, to try, 652, 1264.  
**\*Fray**, to seek, 489.  
**Frayed**, asked, 359, 703, 1046.  
**\*Fra**, noble, 101, 847, 1156.  
 1885, 1961. Used substan-  
 tively, 1545, 1549, 1783.  
**\*Freak**, man, warrior, 149, 196,  
 241, 651.  
**Freaks**, men, 703, 840, 1172.  
**Freaks**, man's, 537.  
**Frelly**, noble, 816, 894.  
**Fremedly**, as a stranger, 714. A.S.  
*fremed*, foreign, alien, strange.  
**Frenches**, fringes, 598.  
**Frenkysch**, French (?), frank (?),  
 jocular (?), 1116. Does not  
*frenkysch fare* = extraordinary  
 conduct?  
 "In faith, Noe, I had as lief thou had  
 slept, for all thy *frankish fare*,  
 For I will not doe after thy red."  
 (Chester Mysteries.)  
**Fres**, froze, 728.  
**Fresche** (meat), 122.  
**Freschly**, quickly, 1294.  
**\*Frithe**, } an enclosed wood, 1430,  
**Frythe**, } 1973, 2151.  
**Frythez**, woods, 695.  
**\*Fro**, from (the time that), 8, 62;  
 from, 1336.  
**Frote**, rub, 1919.  
**Frounses**, wrinkles, contracts, 2306.  
**Frount**, forehead, 959.  
 (= fulsen), to help, aid,  
 .S. *fulstan*, to help.  
 } found, 396, 640.  
**737**.  
 hand, 391.
- Fute**, } (= feut) track of a fox or  
**Furt**, } beast of chase by the  
 odour, 1425. "*Fevote*, vesti-  
 gium." (Prompt. Parv.)  
**Fych**, fix, 396.  
**Fyched**, fixed, 658.  
**Fyked**, shrank, was troubled, 2274.  
 ? Is this the root of *fickle*, A.S.  
*ficol*, deceitful, originally *waver-*  
*ing*.  
**Fyled**, ground, 2225.  
**\*Fylyolez**, round towers, 796.  
**Fylle**, fulfil, 1405, 1934.  
**Fylor**, grindstone (?), 2225.  
**\*Fylter**, contend, join in contest,  
 986.  
**Fynde** = *fyned* = ended (?), 660.  
**Fyne**, perfect, unconditional, 1239.  
**Fynisment**, end, finish, 499.  
**Fynly**, wholly (?), 1391.  
**Fyrre**, moreover, 2121.  
**Fyske3**, runs, 1704. A.S. *fýsian*,  
*fýsan*, to hasten, rush.  
**Fyzed**, were fair (?), 796. A.S.  
*fægr*, fair. Does *fyzed* = united,  
 extended, from A.S. *gefeg*,  
 union? *fégan*, to join, fit.
- \*Game**, }  
**Gamen**, } sport, game, 365.  
**Gamnes**, }  
**Gamne3**, } games, sports, 1319.  
**\*Gart**, caused, 2460.  
**Gargulun**, part of the inwards of  
 a deer, apparently included in  
 the *numbles*, 1335, 1340.  
**Garysoun** (= *warisoun*), treasure,  
 reward, 1225, 1807, 1837. Fr.  
*garison*.  
**Gartye3**, watch towers, 791.  
**Gast** = aghast, afraid, 325.  
**Gate**, way, road, path, 696, 778,  
 930.  
**Gates**, roads, ways, 709.  
**Gaudi** = *gaude* (?) = ornament (?),  
 167.  
**Gay**, } an epithet used substan-  
**Gaye**, } tively, and applied to

- both sexes, 970, 1215, 1822, 2035.  
 Gayly, 598.  
 \*Gayn, to befit, 584.  
 Gayn, serviceable, 178; fit, proper, 1241.  
 Gayn, promptly, quickly, 1621.  
 Gaynest, nearest, speediest, 1973.  
 Gaynly, fitly, promptly, 476, 1297.  
 Gederes, gathers, 421, 777.  
 Gef, gave, 370, 668, 2349.  
 Gentyle, pleasant, 1022.  
 \*Gerc, armour, 569, 584.  
 Gered, arrayed, dressed, 86, 179, 957, 2227; disposed, 791; made, fashioned, 1832.  
 Gereȝ, apparel, 1470.  
 \*Gereȝ, *v.b.* arrays, 1872.  
 Geserne, } axe, 288, 326, 375,  
 Giserne, } 2265. O.Fr. *gisarme*.  
 Get, booty, gain, 1638.  
 Geten, got, 1171, 1625.  
 Gif, to give, 288, 365.  
 Glade, to gladden, 989.  
 Gladloker, gladlier, 1064.  
 \*Glam, talk, conversation, clamour, 1426, 1652.  
 \*Glauderande, noisy, yelping, 1426.  
 Glaumande, noisy, riotous, 46.  
   See *Glam*.  
 Gle, 46.  
 Glede, burning coal, ember, 1609.  
   A.S. *gléd*.  
 Gleme, 598.  
 Glemered, glimmered, gleamed, 172.  
 \*Glent, glance, 1290.  
 \*Glent, glanced, looked, 82, 476; shone, 172, 569, 604; brightened, started up, 1652; shrank, 2290.  
 Glod = glided, came, 661.  
 Glode = clod (?), clump, hillock, tuft (?), 2266.  
 Glodes, pl. of *Glode*, 2181.  
 Glouȝ, 583.  
 \*Glyfte, looked, 2265.  
 "Sir Gawayne *glyftes* on the gome with a glade wille."  
   (Morte Arthure, p. 211.)  
 \*Glyȝt, looked, 842, 970.  
 Goande, walking, 2214.  
 Godly, } goodly, courteously,  
 Goudly, } 273, 584, 1933.  
 Godlych, }  
 Gog, a corruption of God, 390.  
 \*Gomen, game, sport, 273, 661, 1014, 1376.  
 Gomenly, playfully, 1079.  
 \*Gomnes, } games, 495, 683,  
 Gomnez, } 1894.  
 \*Gopnyng = glopnynng = affright.  
 \*Gorde, *p. p.* gird, 1851.  
 Gordeȝ, strikes, spurs, 2062.  
 Gorer = gorget, wrapper or covering for the throat, 957.  
 Gost, spirit, life, 2250.  
 Gostlych, ghostly, 2461.  
 Gotȝ, goes, 375, 1293; (*imp.*) 2119.  
 Gouleȝ, } gules, 619, 663. O.Fr.  
 Gowleȝ, } *gule*.  
 Gracios, gracious, fair, beautiful, 216.  
 Grant-merci, } gramercy, thanks,  
 Graunt-mercy, } 838, 1037, 1392.  
 Grattest, greatest, 207, 1441.  
 Gray, *adj.* 82.  
 Grayes, becomes gray, 527.  
 Grayn, 211.  
 \*Grayth, } ready, prepared,  
 Graythe, } prompt, 448, 597, 2047.  
 Graythed, arrayed, dressed, prepared, 74, 109, 666, 876, 2259.  
 Graythely, readily, speedily, 417, 876, 1006, 1335; willingly, 1470; steadfastly, firmly, 2292.  
 \*Graytheȝ, makes ready, goes, 2014  
 Grece, 425.  
 \*Grem, } anger, 312, 2370; mis-  
 Greme, } chief, 2251; dis-  
   pleasing, 1507.  
 Grenne = grin, make game, 464; A.S. *grennian*.



- Gros. 1326.  
 Gros. } grass. 235, 2181.  
 Grasse. }  
 Greet. greeted, accosted, 842, 1933.  
 Grete = great (ones), 2490.  
 Grete. cry, weep, 2157. A.S. *grotan*.  
 Greue, grove, copse, 1355, 1707, 1898, 1974.  
 Greues. } groves, 207, 508.  
 Greuez. }  
 Greuez, greaves, leg-armour, 575.  
 Grome (=groom), man, knight, 1006.  
 Gronyed, grunted as a wild boar. A.S. *grunian*, to groan.  
 \*Gruchyng, displeasing, misliking, 2126.  
 \*Grwe = gre, will, 2251.  
 Gryed, trembled, was troubled, agitated, 2370. O.H.G. *grüen*, to feel horror. A.S. *grýre*, horror, terror.  
 \*Grymme, sharp, 413; cruel, 2260.  
 \*Gryndel, angry, wroth, fierce, 2338.  
 Gryndel-layk, anger, fierceness, 312.  
 Gryndelly, wrathfully, 2299.  
 Gryndelston, grindstone, 2202.  
 Gryped, grasped, 421, 1335.  
 Gurl, gird, 588.  
 Gylde, gilded, 569.  
 \*Gyng, assembly, 224.  
 \*Gyrdez, strikes, spurs, 2160.  
 Habbe, } have, hast, 327, 452,  
 Habbes, } 626, 1252.  
 Habbez, }  
 Hadet = halet (?) = haled (?), 681. See *Haled*.  
 Halawed, hallowed, 1723.  
 \*Halce = halse, neck, 427.  
 embraced, 939; looped, 1, 185, 218, 657, 1852.  
 istens, 1613.  
 sold, 1125.  
 Halden, held, 124; obliged, bound, 1040, 1828; esteemed, 1297.  
 Halde, } holds, 53, 627; jour-  
 Haldez, } neys, 698.  
 \*Haled, rushed, 458; rose, 788; pulled, hauled, 1338; shot, discharged, 1455; trimmed, 157; gone, 1049.  
 Hales, drives, rushes, 136.  
 Half, behalf, 2149.  
 Halidayez, festivals, 1049.  
 Halme, handle, 218, 330, 2224.  
 Halowyng, 1602.  
 \*Hals, } neck, 621, 1353, 1639.  
 Halse, }  
 Halt, held, 2079.  
 Halue, behalf, 326, 692, 2119; side, 742, 1552; sides, 2070, 2165.  
 Halydam, reliques of the saints (?), or the sacrament (?), 2123.  
 \*Halzes, saints, 2122.  
 Hamlounez, crosses, winds, a hunting term, used of the wiles of the fox, 1708.  
 Han (pl.), have, 23, 1089, 2093.  
 Hanselle, specimen, first occurrence, 491. O.N. *handsel*, stipulatio manufactu.  
 \*Hap, fortune, 48; "*hap vpon heze*" = good fortune everywhere. Sir F. Madden thinks that it is somewhat equivalent to *haphazard*.  
 Hapnest, most fortunate, 56.  
 \*Happe, cover, enclose, 1224.  
 Happed, fastened, 655; wrapped, 864.  
 Hardi, } 59, 371.  
 Hardy, }  
 Harled, drawn, trailed, 744. See *Haled*.  
 Harnays, 590.  
 Harnayst, 592.  
 Hasel, 744.  
 Haspe, chain, fastening, 1233.  
 \*Hasped, clasped, closed, 281, 590, 831. T. B. I. 367.

- \*Hasppez, clasps, 1388.  
 Hastlettez, part of the inwards of a wild boar, 1612. In modern writers it is spelt *harslets*, *haslets*.  
 \*Hat, } am named, 253, 381,  
 Hatte, } 2445; is called, 10.  
 \*Hathel, an adjective used substantively to denote a noble person, knight, or warrior, 221, 234, 256, 655, 844; applied to God, 2056; to an attendant, 2065.  
 Hatheles, } nobles, men, etc., 829,  
 Hathelez, } 895, 949, 1138, 1602.  
 Hattes, art named, 379, 401.  
 Hauberghe, } hauberk, cuirass,  
 Hawbergh, } 203, 268.  
 Haunches, 2032.  
 Hawtesse, nobility, power, 2454.  
 Hay! exclamation or cry of the hunters, 1158, 1445.  
 \*Haylce, embrace, salute, 2493.  
 \*Haylsed, saluted, 223, 810, 829.  
 Haylses, salutes, 972.  
 \*Hazer, more noble, fitter, 352.  
 Hazer = precious (?), 1738.  
 Haz-thorne, hawthorn, 744.  
 Hedlez, headless, 438.  
 \*Hef, heaved, hove, raised, 826, 1587; was elated, 120.  
 Heggez, hedges, 1708.  
 \*Heldande, bowing, inclining, 972, 1104.  
 Helden, to ride, follow, 1692; went, rode, 1922.  
 Helder, more, in a greater degree; "*newer-the-holder*," 376, 430. A word still preserved in Lancashire and the North. O.N. *helledür*.  
 Heldet, set, went down, 1321; moved, went back, 2331.  
 Helme, 203, 268.  
 Hem, them, 862.  
 Heme = hemme (?) = hem (?), skirt (?), 157. Sir F. Madden suggests *close*, *tight*.  
 Hemely, secretly, closely, 1882. Dan. *hemmelig*.  
 \*Hende, fair, courteous, 108, 405, 467, 647, 896, 1104, 1731; used substantively, 827, 946, 1252, 1813, 2330.  
 \*Hendelayk, courtesy, 1228.  
 Hendest, fairest, 26.  
 Hendly, } fairly, courteously,  
 Hendely, } well, 773, 829, 895, 1228.  
 Heng, } hang, 476, 478, 732,  
 Henge, } 1345.  
 Henges, hangs, 182.  
 Henne, hence, 1078. A.S. *henan*.  
 \*Hent, take, receive, 827; (*pret.*) took, 864, 983, 2277, 2317; (*p.p.*) 2323, 2484.  
 Hentes, takes, 605.  
 Her, }  
 Here, } their, 54, 120, 428.  
 Herande, hearing, 450.  
 Herber, lodging, 755, 812. A.S. *hereberga*.  
 Herber, to lodge, 805.  
 Herbered, lodged, 2481.  
 \*Here, host, army, assembly, 59, 2271.  
 Here, hair, 180, 436; bristles, 1587.  
 \*Here, to praise, 1634.  
 Hered-men, courtiers, nobles, 302. A.S. *hired*, a royal household, a court, assembly.  
 Herle, twist, fillet, 190.  
 Herre, higher, 333. T. B. I. 1102.  
 Hersum, attentive, and hence devout, 932. A.S. *hýrsum*, obedient.  
 Heruest, 521.  
 Hest, order, bidding, 1039, 1090, 1092.  
 \*Hete, to promise, 2121.  
 \*Heterly, } violently, strongly,  
 Hetterly, } 1152, 1446, 1462, 1587, 2311; quickly, suddenly, 2291, 2317.  
 Hetes, promises, 1525.

- \*Hethen, hence, 1794, 1879.  
 \*Hette, promised, 450.  
 Hettez, promisedest, 448.  
 Heue, } heavy, 289, 496.  
 Heuy, }  
 \*Heuen, raise, 1346.  
 Heuened, raised, 349.  
 Heuen-ryche, heaven, 2423.  
 Hewen, forged, 211.  
 Hewes, colours, 1761.  
 Hez, } high, 48, 222, 593; noble,  
 Heze, } 812, 831; important,  
 1051; used adverbially, 1417.  
 Hezly, devoutly, 755, 773; highly,  
 greatly, 949; quickly, 983.  
 Hezt, height, 788.  
 Hider, hither, 264.  
 Hized, hastened, 826, 1152. See  
*Hy3*.  
 Hit, it, joined to a plural noun,  
 280, 1251.  
 Hize, } noble, 120; loud, 307, 468,  
 Hyze, } 1165, 1602; tall, 1154;  
 used substantively for heights,  
 high grounds, 1152, 1169, 2004.  
 Higlich, noble, admirable, 183.  
 Higtly, fitly, 1612. A.S. *hyhtlice*,  
 gladly, diligently.  
 Ho, she, 934, 948, 1001.  
 Hod, } hood, 155, 2297.  
 Hode, }  
 Hoge, huge, 208, 743.  
 Hol, } whole, entire, 1338, 1406,  
 Hole, } 1613, 2296.  
 Holle, }  
 \*Holde, castle, mansion, 771.  
 Holde, faithfully, 2129. A.S.  
*held*. Germ. *hold*.  
 Holdely, faithfully, carefully,  
 1875, 2016.  
 Holly, wholly, 1049, 1257.  
 Holsumly, comfortably, 1731.  
 \*Holt, } forest, 742, 1677, 1697.  
 Holte, }  
 Holtez, forests, 1320.  
 Holyn-bobbe, holly-bough, 206.  
 Holz, hollow, 2182.  
 Hom, them, 99, 819, 979, 984.  
 Homered, hammered, struck, 2311.  
 Homes, abodes, dwellings, 12. .  
 Honde-selle, gift, 66. See *Hanselle*.  
 Hondele, handle, use, 289.  
 Hone, delay, 1285.  
 Hoo, stop, 2330.  
 Hope, think, trust, 140, 352, 395,  
 2301.  
 Hor, their, 130, 1014, 1127, 1139.  
 Hore, hoary, 743.  
 Hose, 157.  
 Hostel, dwelling, inn, 805. O.Fr.  
*hosteil*.  
 \*Houed, tarred, 785, 2168.  
 Hoves, hoofs, 459.  
 Hozes, houghs, 1357. A.S. *hoh*.  
 Hult, hilt, 1594.  
 Hunt, hunter, huntsman, 1422,  
 1701.  
 Huntet, hunters, 1147, 1604,  
 1910.  
 Hwe, *hue*, colour, complexion,  
 147, 234.  
 Hwen, how, cut, 1346.  
 Hwes, } hues, 707, 867, 1738.  
 Hwez, }  
 Hyghe! } a shout or exclamation  
 Hyze! } of the hunters, 1445.  
 Hyz, *sb.* high, 302.  
 Hyz, *vb.* hasten, 299, 2121.  
 Hyz, *sb.* haste, 245.  
 Hyze, noble, etc. See *Hize*.  
 Hyzen, hasten, 1910.  
 Hyzes, } hastens, 521, 1351, 1462.  
 Hyzez, }  
 \*Hyzt, promised, 1966, 2218.  
 Hyzt, height, stature, 332.  
 Iche, each, 126, 1811.  
 Ile, 7, 698.  
 Ilk, } same, 24, 1062, 1256,  
 Ilke, } 1385.  
 \*Ilyche, alike, 44.  
 Innogh,  
 Innoghe, } enough, 77, 219, 404,  
 Inoz, } 514, 1401, 1948.  
 Inoze, }  
 Innowe, }

- Inwyth, within, 1055.
- \*Irked, were fatigued, tired, 1573.
- \*I-wis, } truly, certainly, 252,  
I-wyis, } 264, 1035, 1065,  
I-wyisse, } 1226, 1230, 1276,  
1487.
- \*Iapez, jokes, jests, 542, 1957.
- Ientye, gentle, of noble birth or breeding, 542.
- Ioly, 86.
- Iolyly, gaily, 42.
- Ioparde, 97.
- Ioyfnes, youth, 86.
- Iusted, 42.
- Iustyng, 97.
- \*Kachande, catching, raising up, 1581.
- Kanel, collar, neck, 2298.
- Kauelacioun, strife, 2275. See *Caueiounz*.
- Kay, left, 422. O.Dan. *kay, kei*.
- \*Kayre, to journey, depart, 1048, 1670.
- Kayred, turned, returned, 43.
- \*Kajt, } took, received, 643,  
Kajten, } 1118.
- \*Kende = kenned, taught, 1489.
- Kene, bold, brave, 321; active, 482.
- Kenel, 1140.
- Kenet, hound, 1701.
- Kenly, quickly, 1048.
- Kenne = bikenne = commend, 2067.
- \*Kennes, teaches, 1484.
- Kepe, care, heed, 546.
- Kepe, to heed, or meet in a hostile way, 307; take heed, 372.
- Kerhofes, kerchiefs, covering for the head, 954.
- Kerre, rock, 1431. A.S. *carr*.
- \*Kest, chance, blow (?), 2298; twist, knot, 2376; stratagem, 2413.
- Kest, raised, 64; cast, 228, 1192, 1355; thought, formed a plan, 1855; set, appointed, 2242.
- Kesten, cast, 1649.
- \*Keuer, to arrive, accomplish, 750, 804; gain, 1221, 1254; recover, 2298.
- Keuered, recovered, 1755.
- Keuerez, obtains, brings, 1539; descends, 2221.
- Knaged, nailed, riveted, 577. Sw. *nagga*, to prick.
- Knape, a man, 2136. A.S. *cnapa*.
- Knarre, rock, cliff, 1434. Dan. *knort*, a *knur*, knob. O.Dutch *knorre* (*tuber*).
- Knarrez = rocks, 721, 2166.
- Knawen, know, 133.
- Knitten, joined, 1331.
- Knokled, with craggy projections, rugged, 2166. Du. *knoke*, a knot in a tree. Ger. *knochel*, a *knuckle*, knot.
- Knorned, rugged, 2166. Sw. *knorla*, to twist, curl.
- Knot, a hunting term, borrowed from and used as the French *nœud*, 1334.
- Knot, crag, 1431, 1434.
- Knotez, knobs, rivets, 577.
- Knotte, 188, 194.
- Knyt, made, 1642.
- \*Koyntyse, cunning, 2447.
- Kowarde, 2131.
- \*Kyd, } known, renowned, 51,  
Kydde, } 263, 1520; directed, 755; shewed, manifested, 2340.
- Kyn, kind, 890.
- Kynnes, kinds, 1886.
- Kynde, lineage, race, 5; nature, disposition, reason, 321, 1348.
- Kynde, suitable, 473.
- Kyndely, suitably, 135.
- Kyrf, cut, blow, 372. A.S. *cyrf*.
- Kyrk, church, 2196.
- \*Kyrtel, tunic, gown, 1831.
- \*Kyth, } country, land, territory,  
Kythe, } kingdom, 460, 2120.
- \*Lach, to take, receive, accept, 234, 292, 1502, 1676.

- Lachen (*pl.*), take, 1027, 1131.  
 Laches, } takes, receives, 595,  
 Lachez, } 936, 1029.  
 Lachchez, }  
 Lachet, clasp, tie, 591.  
 Lad, led, 947.  
 Ladé, lady, 1810.  
 Laft (= left), granted, delivered,  
 369.  
 Lag = lach = law = low (?), 1729.  
 Laght. See *Lazt*.  
 \*Lance, } ride forth (?), 1175 ;  
 Launce, } tell, 1214.  
 Lanced, rode, 1561 ; uttered,  
 threw out, 1766, 1212.  
 Lancen, fall quickly, drop off,  
 526.  
 Langaberde, Lombards, 12.  
 Lante, lent, gave, 2250.  
 \*Lappe, lappet, hem, 936.  
 Lapped, wrapped, folded, 217, 575.  
 \*Lappez, embraces, 973.  
 Lappez, flaps, 1350.  
 Larges, } liberality, 2381 ; large-  
 Largesse, } ness, 1627.  
 Lasse, less, 87.  
 Lassen, to lessen, 1800.  
 \*Lathe, injury, harm, 2507.  
 \*Lathed, invited, 2403. Sir F.  
 Madden says it is "perhaps a  
 form of *lazed*, laughed."  
 Launched. See *Lanced*.  
 \*Launde, clear level space in a  
 wood, plain, lawn, 765, 2146,  
 2154, 2174, 2333.  
 Lausen, to loose, 1784.  
 \*Lawe, mount, hill, 765, 2171,  
 2175.  
 Lawe, manner (?), 790.  
 Lawsez, looses, 2376.  
 \*Layk, sport, game, 1023, 1125,  
 1513.  
 Layke, to sport, play, 1111.  
 Layked, sported, played, 1554,  
 1560.  
 Laykez, *sb.* sports, 262.  
 Laykez, *vb.* plays, sports, 1178.  
 Laykyng, sport, playing, 472.  
 \*Layne, to conceal, keep secret,  
 1863, 2124, 2128 ; (*imp.*) 1786.  
 Layt, lightning, 199.  
 \*Layt, to look, seek, 411, 449.  
 Laytes, seeks, 355.  
 Lazande, laughing, 988, 1068, 1212.  
 Laze, } laugh, 472, 464, 2514.  
 Lazen, }  
 Lazed, laughed, 69, 909, 1079.  
 Lazes, }  
 Lazez, } laughs, 316, 1479.  
 Lazt, took, caught, received, 328,  
 433, 667, 1830, 2449 ; taken,  
 received, 156, 971, 2507 ;  
 caught, 433.  
 Lazter, laugh, laughter, 1217.  
 Lazyng, laughing, 1954.  
 Le, }  
 Lee, } *lea*, land, plain, 849, 1893.  
 Ledande, leading, 1894.  
 \*Lede, man, person, 98, 540, 1063,  
 1195, 2095 ; people, folk, 258 ;  
 land, territory, 833, 1113.  
 Ledez, men, 38, 126, 679, 1231.  
 \*Lef, dear, agreeable, 909, 1111,  
 1924.  
 Legge, liege, 4.  
 Leke, fastened, encircled, 1830.  
 O.Sw. *lycka*.  
 Lel, } loyal, faithful, 35, 1513,  
 Lele, } 1516.  
 Lelely, loyally, faithfully, 449,  
 1863, 2124.  
 \*Lemand, } gleaming, shining,  
 Lemande, } 485, 1119.  
 Lemed, shone, gleamed, 591,  
 1137, 2010.  
 Lemman, mistress, 1781. A.S.  
*leof-man*.  
 \*Lende, to dwell, tarry, continue,  
 1100, 1499.  
 \*Leng, } to dwell, carry, remain,  
 Lenge, } 411, 254, 1068.  
 Lenge, long, 88.  
 Lenged, dwelt, tarried, 1194,  
 1299, 1683.  
 Lenges, }  
 Lengez, } dwells, tarries, 536, 693.

- \*Lent, remained, sate, was stationed, 1002, 2440; occupied, 1319. See *Lende*.  
 Lenthe, length, 1231.  
 Lentoun, Lent, 502.  
 \*Lere, countenance, 318, 418.  
 \*Lere, loss, 1109; "*lere other better*" = "loss or gain." Sir F. Madden suggests "to teach" as the rendering of *lere*.  
 \*Lese, to lose, 2142.  
 Lested, lasted, 805.  
 Let, caused, 1084; "*let not*," was not able, 1733.  
 Lete, to look, 1206; appeared, 1281; feigned, acted, 1190, 1201, 2257. A.S. *læten*, to pretend.  
 \*Lethe, to depress, moderate, 2438.  
 Lether, skin, 1360.  
 Lette, hindrance, 2142.  
 Lette, to stop, tarry, 2303.  
 Letted, hindered, 1672.  
 Lettez (be), leave off, 1840.  
 Lettrure, science, 1513.  
 \*Leude, } man, knight, 133, 232,  
 Lude, } 449, 675, 851, 908,  
 1109; territory, land, 1124.  
 Leudes, man's, 2449.  
 Leudez, men, 849, 1023, 1413.  
 See *Lede*.  
 Leudlez, companionless, 693.  
 Leue, live, 1035.  
 Leue, believe, 2421, 1784, 2128.  
 \*Leue, dear, beloved, 1133, 2054.  
 Leuer, rather, liefer, 1251; dearer, 1782.  
 Leuest, dearest, most precious, 49, 1802.  
 \*Lewd, } ignorant, unlearned,  
 Lewed, } 1528.  
 Lewte, loyalty, faith, 2366, 2381.  
 Lez, lay, 2006.  
 Lezten, took, 1410. See *Lazt*.  
 Liflod, living, livelihood, 133.  
 Liztez, } alights, 1906, 2176.  
 Lyztez, }
- Like, please, 87.  
 List, pleasure (?), 1719.  
 \*Lithernez, fierceness, 1627.  
 \*Lode, guidance, 969; conduct, behaviour, 1284.  
 Lodly = loudly (?), 1634.  
 \*Lodly, uncourteously, 1772.  
 Lofden (*pret. pl.*), loved, 21.  
 Loft, }  
 Lofte, } chamber, 1096, 1676.  
 Loke, preserve, 2239.  
 Loken, secured, fastened, enclosed, 35, 765, 2487.  
 Lokkez, looks, 419.  
 \*Lome, tool, axe, 2309.  
 Longed, belonged, appertained, 1524, 2515.  
 Longez, belongs, 2381.  
 Longynge, regret, trouble, 540.  
 Lopen, leapt, 1413.  
 Lore, learning, skill, 665.  
 Lortschyp, lordship, 849.  
 Los, } renown, famed, 258, 1528.  
 Lose, } Fr. *los*.  
 \*Lote, sound, word, and hence noise, mirth, gest, 119, 1623, 1917, 2211.  
 \*Lote, feature, aspect, gesture, 639.  
 \*Lotez, words, 988, 1086, 1116, 1399, 1954. Sir F. Madden thinks that *lote* is connected with French *losterie*, badinage.  
 Lothe, unwillingness, 127; loath, unwilling, 1578.  
 Louked, fastened, looped, 217.  
 Loukes, }  
 Lowkez, } locks, 628, 2007.  
 Loupe, loop-hole in a castle, 792.  
 \*Lout, } to bow down, bend to,  
 Loute, } 248.  
 Loutes, } descends, 833, 933;  
 Loutez, } stoops, bends, 1306, 1504.  
 Louue, for *louie* (?), or *loune* (= *loune*), praise, 1256.  
 Louelych, lovingly, 1410.  
 Loueloker, lovelier; used substantively = the fairer one, 973.

- Louelokest, 52.  
 Louied, loved, 87, 702.  
 Louy, love, 1795.  
 Louyes, } loves, 2099, 2468.  
 Louies, }  
 \*Lowande, shining, 26; conspicuous, 679, 868. Cf. O.E. *low*, a flame, light.  
 Lowe, quiet, secret, 1399.  
 Lo3, { low, 302, 1040, 1170.  
 Lo3e, {  
 Lo3e, laughed, 2389.  
 Lo3ly, lowly, humbly, 851, 1960.  
 Lude. See *Lede* and *Leude*.  
 Luf, love, pleasure, 1086, 1284, 1524.  
 Luf-la3yng=luf-laughing=amorous play, 1777.  
 Lufly, } *adj.* lovely, fair, comely,  
 Luflych, } agreeable, amiable,  
 38, 575, 792, 868, 981, 1469,  
 1480, 1657, 1757; *adv.* court-  
 eously, lovingly, becomingly,  
 254, 595, 1206, 1306, 1583.  
 Luflyly, courteously, lovingly,  
 369, 2176, 2514.  
 Lufsome, { lovely, 1814.  
 Lufsum, {  
 Luf-talkyng, 927.  
 Lur, loss, misfortune, 355, 1284,  
 1682.  
 Lurkkes, 1180. T. B. I. 1001.  
 \*Lut, } *pret.* of *loute*, stooped,  
 Lutte, } bowed down, 418,  
 2236, 2255. T. B. I. 6235.  
 \*Lyfte, sky, heaven, 1256.  
 Lyfte, left, 698, 947.  
 \*Lyge3, lies, 1179.  
 \*Lyk, } please, 390; pleased,  
 Lyke, } 1281.  
 Lykker-wys, more pleasing, de-  
 lightful, 968.  
 \*Lymp, to happen, befall, 1109.  
 Lymped, befell, 907.  
 Lyn, }  
 Lyne, } *adj.* linen, 608.  
 Lynde, wood, tree, 256, 2176.  
 Lynde-wodes, 1178.  
 Lyndes (= lendes), loins, 139.  
 A.S. *lendenu*, loins.  
 Lyne, linen; whence for female  
 apparel in general, 1814.  
 Lyre, complexion, countenance,  
 943, 2228; skin, 2080.  
 Lyst, desired, willed, 941, 1784,  
 2049.  
 Lyste, pleases, 2133.  
 Lystily, } quickly, promptly,  
 Lystyly, } 1190, 1334.  
 \*Lyte, few, 701, 1776.  
 \*Lythen, to listen, 1719.  
 Ly3e, to lie, recline, 1096, 1994.  
 Ly3t, alighted, 1924.  
 Ly3t, light, not heavy, 608.  
 Ly3t, to descend, alight, fall, 423,  
 1175, 1373, 2220.  
 Ly3te3, alights. See *Lizte3*.  
 Ly3ten (*pl.*), alight, 526.  
 Ly3tly, easily, 423, 1299.  
 Mach=match, to encounter, meet  
 in combat, 282.  
 \*Mace=mas=makes, 1885.  
 \*Madde, rage with love, 2414.  
 Ma fay! ma foi! 1495.  
 Mas, }  
 Mase, } makes, 106.  
 Males, }  
 Male3, } bags, trunks, 1129, 1809.  
 Malt, dissolved, melted, 2080.  
 Maner, 90.  
 Manere3, 924.  
 Manerly, 1656.  
 Mansed=manased,menaced,2345.  
 \*Marre, to destroy, 2262.  
 \*Mat, } overcome, discouraged,  
 Mate, } wearied, 336, 1568.  
 Matyne3, } morning prayers,  
 Matynnes, } 756, 2188.  
 \*Maw-gref, in spite of, 1565.  
 \*May, maiden, 1795.  
 \*Mayn, great, powerful, strong,  
 94, 187, 336, 497.  
 Maynteines, maintains, 2053.  
 Maztyly, mightily, forcibly, 2262,  
 2290.

- Me, used in opposition with the subject of the sentence = myself, thyself, etc., 1214, 1905, 1932, 2014, 2144.
- \*Mele, to speak, talk, 2295, 2503.
- Meled, spoke, talked, 447, 1230, 2373.
- Melez, speak, 543, 974, 2336.
- Melle, } conflict, battle, 342, 644,  
Melly, } 1451.
- \*Mene, to signify, 232; devise, 985; make attempt on (?), 1157.
- \*Mengod, mixed, 1720.
- \*Mensk, } honour, worship, 834,  
Menske, } 914, 2052; worshipful, 964.
- Mensked, honourably decked 153.
- Menskcs, honours, 2410.
- Menskful, honourably, 555, 1628, 1809.
- Menskly, honourably, 1312, 1983.
- \*Meny, } retinue, household, com-  
Meyny, } pany, 101, 1372, 1625, 1729, 2468.
- Menyng, knowledge, remembrance, 924.
- Mere, simple, pure, good, 153, 878, 924, 1495.
- \*Mere, } = meer, boundary, and  
Merk, } hence appointed place of meeting, 1061, 1073.
- Merkkez, aims at, 1592.
- Mes, mess, meal, 999.
- Messes, 999.
- Messe-quyle, the time of celebrating mass, 1097.
- Metely, measurely, fitly, 1004, 1414.
- \*Methles, uncourteous, without pity, 2106.
- Meued, moved, 90.
- Mezel-mas, Michaelmas, 532.
- Miche, much, 569.
- Misy, quagmire, 749. Still used in the North.
- Mo, more, 23, 730, 770.
- Mode, mind, 1475.
- Molaynes, round embossed ornaments (?), 169.
- \*Molde, earth, ground, 137, 914, 964.
- Mon, used as the Germ. *man*, and Fr. *on*, for one, a person, 1209, 1484.
- Mon, must, 1811. O.N. *mun*.
- More, greater, bigger, 649, 2100.
- Moroun, morrow, 1208.
- Morsel, 1690.
- Mot, may, 342, 387, 2053; must, 1965, 2510.
- Mote = moot, assemblage, meeting, 635, 910. A.S. *mót*.
- \*Mote, castle, 764, 2052.
- Mote, atom, 2009.
- Mote, } notes or measures of a  
Motez, } bugle, 1141, 1364.
- Mounture, saddle horse, 1691.
- Mournyng, 543.
- Mozt, }  
Mozten, } might, 84, 1871, 1953.
- Much, great, loud, 182, 2336.
- Much-quat = much-what, many matters, 1280.
- Muckel, greatness (of stature, size), 142.
- Muged, was cloudy, 142. O.N. *mugga*, der nubilus. Sir F. Madden renders it *stirred*, hovered.
- Mulne, mill, 2203. A.S. *myln*.
- \*Munt, blow, 2350. See *Mynt*.
- Munt, feigned, 2262.
- Muryly, merrily, pleasantly, playfully, 2336, 2345.
- Mused, stood in doubt, 2424.
- "*Mowsyn* or priuely stodyyn (stondyn a dowe, K. stodyn a dowe, H. *musen* or stodien a doughte, P.) Muso, Musso." (Prompt. Parv.)
- Mute, pack of hounds, 1451, 1720.
- Mute = meet, meeting of hunters, 1915. A.S. *mút*.
- Muthe = mouthe, 447, 1428.
- Mwe, to move, 1565.



- Myd-morn, 1073.  
 Mynged, remarked, announced, 1422. A.S. *myngian*, to inform, mark. Sir F. Madden suggests *assembled* as the meaning of *mynged*.  
 Mynez, calls to remembrance, 995.  
 \*Mynne, to think, remember, devise, 141, 1681, 1800, 1992, 1769. T. B. I. 431.  
 Mynne, less, 1881. O.N. *minni*.  
 Mynned, devised, 982.  
 Mynstralcie, 484.  
 \*Mynt, aim, blow, 3345.  
 Myntes (*pl.*) blows, 2352.  
 Myntest, didst aim or strike, 2274.  
 \*Myntez, aims, strikes, 2290.  
 Myre, 749.  
 Mys-boden, offered wrong, 2339.  
 Mysse, faults, 2391.  
 Myst-hakel, cloak of myst, 2081. A.S. *hacele*, a cloak, mantle.  
 Myytes, powers, 282.
- Nade, had not, 724, 763.  
 Naf, have not, 1066.  
 \*Nakrys = nakers, drums, 1016.  
 \*Nakryn (*gen. pl.*), of drums, 118.  
 Nar, are not, 2092.  
 Naunt, *thy naunt*, thine aunt, 2467.  
 Nauther, } neither, 203, 430,  
 Nawther, } 1095.  
 Nay, denied, refused, 1836.  
 Naylez, 603.  
 Naylet, nailed, 599.  
 Nayted, celebrated, 65. O.E. *nayte*, to use, employ, enjoy. O.N. *neyta*. Left unexplained by Sir F. Madden. T. B. I. 6031.  
 Nazt, night, 1407.  
 Nede, } of necessity, necessarily,  
 Nedes, } 1287, 1771, 1965,  
 Nede3, } 2510.  
 \*Negh, } to approach, 1054; to  
 Neghe, } touch, 1836. See *Neze*.
- Neked, little or nothing, 1062, 1805.  
 \*Neme, take, 1347.  
 Nerre, nearer, 237, 556, 1306.  
 \*Neuen, to name, speak of, 58.  
 Neuened, named, mentioned, 65, 541.  
 Neuenes, names, 10.  
 Ne3, }  
 Ne3e, } nigh, 929, 1771, 1922.  
 Nie3, }  
 \*Ne3e, to approach, 1575.  
 Ne3ed, approached, 132, 697, 929.  
 Ne3es, approaches, 1998.  
 Nif, unless, 1769.  
 Nikked naye, denied strongly, 706, 2471.  
 Nirt, cut, hurt, 2498.  
 Nobelay, nobleness, 91.  
 \*No-bot, except, 2182.  
 Noghe = nyghe = nigh, 697.  
 Noke, corner, nook, 660.  
 Nolde, would not, 1054, 1825.  
 Nome, name, 10, 408, 937.  
 Nome, took, 809, 1407.  
 Nomen, taken, 91.  
 None3, nonce, 844.  
 \*Norne, } to proffer, 1661, 1669,  
 Nurne, } 1823; allege, 2443.  
 \*Note, occasion, business, use, 358, 599. "*To the note*" = to the axe, *i. e.* to the business in hand, 420. Sir F. Madden suggests that *note* = *throat-knot*. Fr. *nœud*.  
 Note, noted (?), 2092.  
 Noubles, parts of the inward of the deer, 1347.  
 \*Nouthē, } now, 1251, 1934,  
 Nowthe, } 2466; not (?), 1784.  
 Nowther, neither, 659.  
 Nowel, Noel, Christmas, 68.  
 No3t, nought, 680, 694, 961.  
 Nurne. See *Norne*.  
 Nurned, proffered, 1771.  
 Nurture, 919, 1661.  
 Nwe, new, anew, 60, 636, 1668.

- Nwe3, news, tidings, 1407.  
 Nw-3er, } New-year, 60, 105,  
 Nwe-3er, } 284.  
 Nw-3eres, } New-year's, 454,  
 Nwe-3ere3, } 1054, 1669.  
 \*Nye, } difficulty, trouble, harm,  
 Ny3e, } 58, 2002, 2141.  
 Nye, to harm, assault, 1575.  
 Nykked with nay, denied, 706.  
 \*Nyme, to take, 993, 2141.  
 Nys, nice, strange, 323, 358.  
 Nysen (*pres. pl.*), become foolish,  
 1266.  
  
 O, of, 615.  
 Of, from, 183, 519, 1413; off,  
 773, 1332, 1607.  
 Of-kest, cast off, 1147.  
 Oghe, ought, 1526.  
 Olde, 1440. See *For-olde*.  
 On, one, 30, 206, 864, 952; in,  
 867, 969.  
 On-chasyng = a-chasing, a-hunt-  
 ing, 1143.  
 On-coolde, sorrowfully, 2474.  
 \*On-dry3e = on-dre3e = adre3,  
 aside, 1031.  
 One, alone, unaccompanied, 2118;  
*hym one*, 904; *oure one*, 1230,  
 2245.  
 Onewe, anew, 65.  
 One3, once, 1090.  
 On-ferum, afar, 1575.  
 On fyrst, at first, 301, 491, 1477.  
 On-huntyng, a hunting, 1102.  
 On-hy3t, on high, aloft, above, 421.  
 On-lenthe, afar, 232, 1231.  
 On-life, } alive, in life, 385, 1717,  
 On-lyue, } 1786.  
 On-lofte, aloft, above, 788, 2261.  
 On-loghe, below, down, 1373.  
 On-ny3tes, at night, in the night,  
 47, 693.  
 On (vp)-slepe, asleep, 244.  
 On-stray, astray, aside, 1716.  
 Onsware, to answer, 275.  
 Onsware3, answers, 386.  
  
 Or, than, 1543.  
 Oritore, oratory, 2190.  
 \*Orpedly, boldly, 2232.  
 Ory3t, aright, 40.  
 Ostel, mansion, 253. See *Hostel*.  
 Other, or, 9, 702, 1246; either,  
 2216.  
 Other-whyle, other times, 722.  
 Oute, throughout, wholly, 1511.  
 Outtrage, surprising, 29.  
 Ouerall, everywhere, 630.  
 Ouer-thwert, athwart, across,  
 1438.  
 Ouer-walt, overcome, overturned,  
 314. See *Walt*.  
 Ouer-3ede, passed over, 500.  
 O3t, ought, 300, 1815.  
 \*O3t = a3t, bold, 2215.  
  
 Pane, cloth, 154. O.Fr. *pane*.  
 Pane3 (*pl.*), 855.  
 \*Papiaye3, parrots, 611.  
 Papure, paper, 802.  
 Paraunter, peradventure, 2343.  
 Pared, cut, 802.  
 Park, 769.  
 Passande, passing, 1014.  
 Patrounes, sovereigns, 6.  
 Paume3, antlers, 1155.  
 Paunce, coat of mail, 2017.  
 \*Paye3, pleases, 1379.  
 Payne, to be at pains, endeavour,  
 1042.  
 \*Payre, to injure, impair, 1734.  
 Payred, failed, 650, 1456.  
 Payttrure, defence for the neck of  
 a horse, 168, 601.  
 Pelure, costly fur, 154.  
 Pelures (*pl.*), furs, 2029.  
 Pendauntes, } the dropping orna-  
 Pendaunte3, } ments of horse-  
 trappings or a girdle, 168, 2038,  
 2431.  
 Penyes, pence, money, 79.  
 Pentangel, } figure of five points,  
 Pentaungel, } 620, 636, 664.  
 Pented, pertained, 204.

- Pernyng, picking and dressing, a term applied to birds, 611.
- \*Pertly, openly, promptly, 544, 1941.
- Pes, peace, 266.
- Pese = (pisum); *quite pease* = "white pease."
- "Set shallow brooks to surging seas,  
An Orient pearl to a *white pease*."  
(Puttenham, quoted by French—*English, Past and Present*, p. 162.)
- Peter! an oath used as Mary! 813.
- Piched, } fastened, 576; situated,  
Pyched, } fixed, 768.
- \*Piked, } ornamented, cleaned,  
Pyked, } burnished, 769, 2017.
- Pyned, enclosed, fortified (?), 769.  
(Perhaps a mistake for *pynaced*.  
Sir F. Madden).
- Pypyng, 1017.
- \*Pine, } trouble, grief, pain, tor-  
Pyne, } ment, 123, 747, 1812,  
1985.
- Piped, 747.
- Pitosly, 747.
- Pizt. See *Pyzt*.
- Plate, 583.
- Platez, steel armour for the body,  
2017.
- Plesaunce, pleasure, 1247.
- Plesaunt, 808.
- Plytes, straits, 733.
- Plyzt, harm, danger, 266; offence,  
fault, 2393.
- Polaynes, knee-pieces in a suit of  
armour, 576. This term for *genouillieres* is found in the house-  
hold book of Edward the First.
- Policed, } polished, 576, 2038;  
Polysed, } made clean, absolved,  
Polyst, } 2393.
- Porter, 808.
- Poudred, 800.
- Pouer, poor, 768.
- Poynt, condition, 2049; to de-  
clare, write, 1009.
- Praunce, 2064.
- Prayer, meadow, 768. Fr.  
*prairie*.
- Prayse, estimate, appraise, 1850.
- Prece, proceed, 2097.
- Presed, thronged, 830.
- \*Prestly, promptly, 757, 911.
- Preué, privy, secret, 902.
- Preue, to prove, 262.
- Preued, proved, 79.
- Prik, to gallop, 2049.
- Pryme, *prime*, six o'clock in the  
morning, 1175.
- Pris, } price, worth, estimation,  
Prys, } excellence, 1247, 1277,  
1770, 1850, 2364; reward,  
prize, 1379, 1630.
- Prise, fine, good, 1945.
- Prowes, prowess, valour, courage,  
912, 1249.
- Prys, note of the horn in hunting  
after breaking up the game,  
1362, 1601.
- Pure, quite, perfect, 808, 1247.
- Pured, refined, pure, 633, 912,  
1737, 2393.
- Pured, furred, 154.
- Pynakle, 800.
- Pyne, to take pains, 1538.
- Pyned, 1009.
- Pysan, gorget of mail or plate at-  
tached to the helmet, 204.
- Pyth, strength, power, 1456.
- Pyzt, pitched, fixed, 1456, 1734.
- Quat, what, 233, 460.
- Quat, how! lo! 563, 2201.
- Quat-so, whatsoever, 255.
- Quaynt, 999.
- Quel, while, 822.
- Queldepoyntes, hassocks (?), 877.
- \*Quelle, to put an end to, 752;  
kill, 1449, 2109.
- Quelled, slain, 1324.
- \*Queme, good, pleasant, 578, 2109.
- Quen, } when, 20, 130, 497.  
Quhen, }
- Quere, where, 1058.
- Quer-fore, wherefore, 1294.

- Quere-so, wheresoever, 644, 1227, 1490.
- Querre, quarry, 1324. Fr. *curée*.  
*To make the quarry*=to break up the deer, and feed the hounds on the skin.
- Quest, united cry of the hounds, 1150, 1421.
- Quethe, cry, clamour, 1150. A.S. *cwéthan*, to call; *cwithe*, a saying.
- Quethen = whethen = whence, 461.
- Quether, whether, 1109.
- Quettyng = whetting, 2220.
- Quile, } while, 30, 257, 722,  
 Quyle, } 1035; until, 536;  
 sometimes, at times, 1730;  
 during, 1096.
- Quit, 293.
- Quit, }  
 Quite, } white, 799, 885, 1205,  
 Quyt, } 2364.  
 Quyte, }
- Quo, who, 231.
- Quo-so, whoso, 209, 306.
- Quoyntaunce, acquaintance, familiarity, 975.
- Quy, who, 623.
- Quyke, alive, 2109.
- Quyl, } See *Quile*.  
 Quyle, }
- Quyle forth, during some, 1072.
- Quyte, to requite, repay, 2244, 2324.
- Rabel, rabbel, pack, 1899.
- \*Race (on-race), swift course, pace, 1420.
- Race, cut, blow, 2076.
- Rach, hound, 1903. A.S. *ræcce*, *ræcc*, a setting dog.
- Rachchez, } hounds, 1164, 1362,  
 Rachez, } 1420, 1426, 1907.
- \*Rad, afraid, 251.
- Rad, ready, quick, 862. A.S. *rád*.
- \*Radly, promptly, readily, 367, 1164, 1343, 1744.
- Raged, ragged, 745.
- \*Rak, vapour, fog, 1695.
- Rake, course, way, road, path, 2144, 2160. Cf. Sc. *sheep-raike*. See *Rayke*.  
 "Out of the *rake* of rihtwysnes renne suld he nevre."  
 (K. Alex., p. 115.)  
 ————"lene to the left handes For the *rake* on the right hand, that may na mann passe."  
 (*Ibid.*, p. 130.)
- \*Rande, a path, 1710. Sir F. Madden reads *raude*.
- \*Rapley, quickly, 2219.
- \*Rapes, moves quickly, runs, 1309, 1903. O. Sw. *rapp*, *velox*, citus.
- Rasez, rushes, 1461. A.S. *resan*. See *Race*.
- \*Rasse, raised mound, eminence, 1570.
- Ratheled, fixed, rooted, 2294.
- \*Rawez, rows, 513.
- \*Rawthe, terrible, dreadful, 2204.
- \*R[a]lykande, loud, strong, literally *rushing*, from *rayke*, to rush, flow, 2337.
- \*Rayked, went, moved, ran, 1727, 1735.
- Raykez, proceed, 1076.
- Rayled, spread, 952; bordered, 163, 603, 745. *Rayle* in O. E. signifies to cover, clothe; deck, and may be connected with *rail*, a garment. A.S. *hrægl*. See *Boke of the Howlat*, iii. (ed. Laing).
- Raynez, reins, 447.
- Raysoun, reason, argument, 227; *by-resoun* = by right, rightly, reasonably, 1344.
- \*Razt, rushed, 432; reached, gave, 1817, 1874, 2297.
- Raztez, gavest, 2351.
- Rech, } reach, give, 66, 1804,  
 Reche, } 2059; attain, 1243.
- \*Reches, } extends, 183; reach-  
 Rechez, } est, givest, 2324.

- Rechatand = reheating, blowing  
 the recheat, 1911.  
 Recheated, blew there cheat, blown  
 on with the *recheat*, 1466.  
 \*Rechles, careless, 40.  
 Recorded, 1123.  
 Recre-aunt, 456.  
 \*Red = rede, advise, counsel, 738.  
 Redde, counselled, said, 443.  
 \*Rede, maintain (?), 1970 ; coun-  
 sel, 363, 2111.  
 Redez, managest, 373.  
 Redly, }  
 Redily, } readily, 373, 392.  
 Refourme, renew, remake, 378.  
 \*Rehayted, cheered, encouraged,  
 895, 1422, 1744.  
 Reherce, 1243.  
 Rehersed, 392.  
 \*Rekenly, nobly, worthily,  
 princely, 39, 251, 821.  
 \*Rele, to encounter, 2246.  
 \*Reled, swaggered, 229 ; rolled,  
 spread, 304.  
 Remene, to remember, 2483.  
 Remorde, to blame, 2434.  
 \*Remwe, to remove, change, 1475.  
 \*Renay, refuse, 1827.  
 \*Renayed, refused, 1821.  
 \*Renk, } man, knight, 303, 691,  
 Renke, } 1558, 1821.  
 Renkkes, } men, 432, 862, 1134,  
 Renkkez, } 2246.  
 Rennande, running, 857.  
 \*Renne, to run, 1568.  
 Rennes, }  
 Rennez, } runs, 310, 731, 1570.  
 Repayre, 1016.  
 Require, 1056.  
 \*Res, swift course, pace, 1164,  
 1899.  
 Resayt, a hunting term applied  
 to the stations taken up by  
 those on foot, 1168.  
 Rescove, rescue, 2308.  
 \*Resette, place of reception,  
 abode, 2164.  
 Respite, 297.  
 Restayed, stopt, driven back, 1153.  
 Restayeyd, constrained, 1672.  
 Reue, to take away, bereave, 2459.  
 Reuel, 311, 538.  
 Reuerence, 251, 1243.  
 Rewarde, 1610.  
 Richchande, running, 1898.  
 Richen, dress, 1130.  
 \*Ricchis, }  
 Riches, } goes, 8 ; prepares,  
 Ryches, } dresses, 1309, 1873.  
 Riche, } noble, proud, powerful,  
 Ryche, } 8, 20, 39, 40, 397,  
 1744. Used substantively in  
 the plural, *nobles*, 66, 362.  
 Riche, *sb.* horse (?), 2177.  
 Richley, } proudly, nobly, 308,  
 Rychely, } 931.  
 Rimed, hemmed (contemptuously),  
 308. Dan. *rømme sig*, to hem,  
 to clear one's throat (Sturzen-  
 Becker).  
 Roche, rock, 2199.  
 Rocher, rock, 1432.  
 Rocheres, }  
 Rochere3, } rocks, 1327, 1698.  
 Rode, rood, 1949.  
 Rof, blow, cut, 2346 ; evidently  
 from O.E. *rife*, to tear, cut.  
 Rogh, }  
 Roghe, } rough, shaggy, 745,  
 Ro3, } 1432, 1608, 1898,  
 Roze, } 2162, 2198.  
 Rokked, rolled, knocked off,  
 cleansed, 2018.  
 "Geoffrey of Vinesauf says, '*Rotantur*  
*loricæ, ne rubigine squalescunt*,'  
 which, Sir S. Meyrick adds, was done  
 by putting the coat of mail into a  
 barrel filled with sand and rolling it  
 about." (Crit. Inq., l. 85.)  
 Rome3 = roams, walks, proceeds,  
 2198.  
 Rone3, thickets, brushwood, 1466.  
 "Thane thay roode by that ryuer, that  
 rynnnd so awythe,  
 Thare the ryndez overrechez with  
 realle bowghez ;  
 The roo and the rayne-dere reklesse  
 thare ronnene

- In *ranes* and in *rosers* to *ryotte* thame-selvane."  
(Morte Arthure, l. 923. E.E.T.S.)
- Ronge (*pret.* of *ringe*), resounded, clattered, 2204.  
"Hys armour *ryngis* or *clattirs* horribly."  
(G. Douglas, vol. ii., p. 576.)
- Ronk, beautiful, 513.  
Ronkkled, wrinkled, 953.
- Rote, in phrase *bi-rote* = cheerfully, confidently, 2207. A.S. *rôt*, cheerful. Cf. *root-fast*, firm, steadfast (A.S. *rôt-fast*). This term is left unexplained by Sir F. Madden.
- \*Roun, to whisper, commune, 362.  
Rounce, steed, 303. O.E. *runci*. Fr. *roncin*.
- \*Rous, = rose, praise, fame, 310.  
Roust, rust, 2018.  
Route, violent movement, impetus, 457.
- Roue, cleaved, cut, 2346; *pret.* of *rive*.
- Roue3, roofs, 799.  
Ro3, } rough. See *Rogh*.  
Ro3e, }
- \*Ruchched, } ordered, fixed, set-  
Ruched, } tled, 303, 367, 2219. See *Riches*.
- \*Rudede, streaked with red, ruddy, 1695. Cf. O.E. *rode* and *ruddon*.  
Rudelez, curtains, canopies, 857.  
Ruful, 2076.
- Rugh, } rough, 953, 2166. See  
Ru3e, } *Rogh*.
- \*Runisch, violent, impetuous, 457.  
\*Runischly, fiercely, roughly, 304.  
Runyschly, violently, 432.
- \*Rurd, } noise, clamour, 1149,  
Rurde, } 1698, 1916.
- \*Ruthes, moves, dresses, 1558.  
Ryalme, realm, 310, 691.
- \*Rych, direct, 1223. See *Riches*.  
Ryches, goes, prepares. See *Riches*.  
Ryched, enriched, 599; prepared, 2206.
- Ryd, } = rid, to release, 364;  
Rydde, } separate, 2246. A.S. *riddan*.
- Ryde, cut away, 1344.  
Rygge, back, 1344, 1608.  
Ryme3, skirts, 1343. A.S. *reama*. O.E. *reme*, membrane, rim. See *Rym* in Glossary to Hampole.
- \*Rynge3 = *rynke3* = *renke3* = men, 2018.
- Rynk, ring, 1817, 1827.  
Ryol, royal, 2036.  
Rype3, become ripe, 528.  
Rys, bough, twig, 1698. A.S. *hris*.  
\*Rytte = *ryte*, cut, rip, 1332. Fris. *ryte*. See Morte Arthure, ed. Perry, ll. 2138, 3754, 3825.
- \*Ryue = *ryfe* = rife, much, 2046.  
Ryue3, rips, rives, cuts, 1341, 2290.
- Ry3t, addressed, prepared, 308.
- Sabatoun3, steel shoes, 574. Fr. *sabot*. Spanish *sapato*.  
Sadel, sb. 437; vb. 1128.  
Sadly, gravely, steadily, 437, 1593, 1937, 2409.
- Saf, save, except, 394.  
Sage = *segge* = man, 531.  
\*Sale, hall, 197, 243, 349.  
Salue, to salute, 1473.  
Salure, salt-cellar, 886.
- \*Same, } together, 50, 363, 673,  
Samen, } 744, 1318.
- \*Samen, to assemble, 1372.  
Samned, joined, 659.  
Sauer, safer, 1202.
- Saverly, savourly, carefully, 1937, 2048.
- Saw, } saying, speech, 1202, 1246.  
Sa3e, }
- Sa3e3, words, 341.  
Saylande, flowing, 865.  
Sayn, girdle, 589.
- \*Sayned, blessed, 761, 1202.  
Saynt, rich stuff, Fr. *samit*, 2431.  
Scade = *schade*, divided, severed, 425.

- \*Scathe, harm, 674, 2353.  
 Schadden, shed, dropt, 727.  
 Schafte, spear, 205.  
 Schafteſd (ſattled), ſet, ſank, 1467.  
 Schale, ſhall, 1240.  
 \*Schalk, man, knight, 160, 424, 562, 1776, 2061, 2372.  
 Schalkeꝝ, men, knights, 1454.  
 Scham, 317.  
 Schamed, 1189.  
 Schankes, legs, 160.  
 Schap, was formed, ſhapen, 2328.  
 Schape, direct (?), 1210. Sir F. Madden ſuggests *escape*.  
 Schapen, ſhaped, 213.  
 Schapes, relates, 1626.  
 Scharp, uſed ſubſtantively for ſword, 1593, 1902; axe, 2318.  
 Schaterande, daſhing, 2083.  
 Schawe, to ſhow, 27.  
 \*Schaze, grove, wood, 2161.  
 Scheder = ſchedes (?), drifts (?), 956.  
 Schedeꝝ, pours, 506.  
 Scheldeꝝ, ſhields of a boar, 1456, 1626.  
 \*Schemered = ſhimered, glittered, 772.  
 \*Schend, } to deſtroy, confound,  
 Schende, } 2266.  
 \*Schene, bright, beautiful, 662, 2314; uſed ſubſtantively, 2268.  
 Schere = chere, countenance, mien, 334.  
 Scher, cut, 1337.  
 Schere, to cut, ſhear, 213.  
 Scho, ſhe, 1259, 1550, 1555.  
 Scholes, hangs down (?), or, perhaps, an error for *schoes*, 160.  
 Schonkes, } legs, 431, 846.  
 Schonkeꝝ, }  
 Schore, ſhore, earth, 2161, 2332.  
 Schoreꝝ (*pl.*), 2083.  
 Schotten, ſhot, 1167.  
 Schowued, ſhoved, fell with force, 2083.  
 Schowen (*pl. pres.*), ſhove, push, 1454.  
 Schowueꝝ, ſhoves, pushes, 2161.  
 Schrank, ſunk, pierced, 425, 2313.  
 Schrof, ſhrived, 1880.  
 Schunt, ſhunted, flinched, ſhrunk, 1902, 2280.  
 "I will *shunt* for no ſhame."  
 (T. B. I. 601.)  
 Schwne = ſhun, protect, defend, 205.  
 Schylde, forbid, 1776.  
 \*Schyn, ſhall, 2401.  
 \*Schyr, } fair, bright, clear, 317,  
 Schyre, } 425, 619, 772; uſed  
 Schyre, } ſubſtantively for  
 skin, neck, 2256.  
 Schyre, fairly, clearly, 506, 2083.  
 Schyrer, fairer, clearer, 955.  
 Schyrly, cleanly, 1880.  
 Scowtes, high rocks (?), 2167.  
 Sech, ſeek, 1052.  
 Seche, ſuch, 1543.  
 Sege, } ſiege, 1, 2525.  
 Segge, }  
 \*Segg, } man, knight, 96, 115,  
 Segge, } 226, 394, 437, 574.  
 Segges, } men, 673, 822, 1438.  
 Seggeꝝ, }  
 Seghe, ſaw, 1705.  
 \*Seker = ſiker, ſure, truſty, faithful, 265, 403.  
 Selden, ſeldom, 499.  
 \*Sele, good fortune, proſperity, 1938, 2409, 2422.  
 Sellokeſt, moſt ſurprising, 1439.  
 \*Selly, marvel, wonder, 475, 2170.  
 Selly, ſtrange, 28; wondrously, 1194.  
 Sellyeꝝ, wonders, 239.  
 Sellyly, ſtrangely, wondrously, 963, 1803.  
 Sellyly = ſelly, excellent, 1962.  
 Selure, canopy, 76.  
 Seluen, ſelf, 51, 107, 113, 1548.  
 Semblaunce, } countenance, ap-  
 Semblaunt, } pearance, beha-  
 viour, 148, 468, 1273, 1658.  
 Semble, aſſembly, 1429.  
 \*Seme, ſeemly, proper, 1085.

- Seemed, beseemed, befitted, 73, 1929.
- Semely, comely, fair, 672, 685.
- Semeȝ, seams, borders, 610.
- Semly, } fairly, suitably, becom-  
Semlych, } ingly, courteously,  
865, 882, 916, 1198, 1658.
- Semloker, more seemly, fairer, 83.
- Semlyly, becomingly, 622.
- Sendal, fine silk, 76. According to Ducange it is a species of camelot.
- Sene, truthfull(?), 148, 341. O. Sw. *sann*, true. Spenser uses *seen* or *sene* in the sense of *tried*, experienced.
- Sene, to see, 712.
- \*Sere, several, 124, 632, 761, 822, 1982; diverse, 889, 2417; separately, 1522.
- \*Serlepes, severally, by turns, 501.
- Sertayn, certainly, 174.
- Serued, deserved, 1380.
- Seruyce, 751.
- Sese, to receive, 1825.
- Sesed, held, seized, 822, 1330.
- Sesed, ceased, 1, 1083, 2526.
- Sete = swete (?), 889.
- Settel, seat, chair, 882.
- Seuer, to part, 1988.
- Seueres, parts, 1797.
- \*Sewe, prepared dish of meat, perhaps a stew, 892.
- Sewes (*pl.*), 124, 889.
- Seye, to go, 1879.
- Seȝ, }  
Seȝe, } saw, 672, 707, 1619, 1911.  
Seȝen, }
- Seȝen, arrived, 1958.
- Sidbordeȝ, 115.
- \*Siker, } sure, trusty, brave, 96,  
Syker, } 115, 2048, 2493.
- Siker, surely, 163.
- Siker, *vb.* to pledge, "*siker my trauthe*" = pledge my word (*troth*), 1673; assure, 394.
- Sille, seat, 55. A.S. *sylla*, a chair.
- Skayued, wild, 2167. See note, p. 83.
- Skere = shere = pure, modest, 1261. A.S. *sc̥tr*.
- Skete, quickly, 19.
- \*Skweȝ, clouds (?), shadows (?), 2167. Sir F. Madden suggests groves, shady coverts.
- \*Skyfted = shifted, changed, 19.
- \*Skyl, } reason, 1296, 1509.  
Skylle, }
- Skynnez, in phrase *any skynnez* = *any-s-kyenne* = of any kind, 1539.
- Skyrtez, horse-trappings, 601; skirts of a robe, 865.
- \*Slade, valley, 2147.
- Slades, valleys, 1159.
- Slaked, ceased, 244. See note, p. 81.
- Slentyng, shooting, glancing, 1160. See note, p. 82.
- Slete, 729.
- \*Sleȝe, ingenious, 797, 893.
- Sleȝly, slyly, softly, 1182.
- \*Sleȝt, } stratagem, 1854, 1858.  
Sliȝt, }
- Sleȝtez = sleights, contrivances, 916.
- Slode = slided, slipt, 1182.
- Sloke (*vb. imp.*), stop, cease (talking), 412. O.N. *sloka*. See note, p. 81.
- Slomeryng, slumbering, 1182.
- Slot, pit of the stomach, 1330, 1593. According to some *slot* is the hollow above the breast-bone. "O-slante doune fro the *slote* he slyttes at ones." (Morte Arthure, l. 2254. E. E. T. S.)
- Slypped, fallen, 244.
- Slyȝt, skilful, 1542.
- Smartly, quickly, 407.
- Smeten, smote, 1763.
- Smethely, smoothly, 1789.
- \*Smolt, mild, 1763.
- Smothely, perfectly, 407.
- Snart, severely, sharply, 2003. O.N. *snart*.
- Snawe, snow, 956.
- Snayped, nipped, 2003. O.E. *snaiþ*,



- to snub, nip, pierce. O.N. *sneipa*.  
 Snitered, drove, drifted, 2003.  
 Sojourned, lodged, 2048.  
 Solace, 570.  
 Sop, hasty meal, 1135.  
 Sore, grieved, 1826, 1988.  
 \*Sorze, imprecation, 1721; sorrow, 2415.  
 Sostnaunce, 1095.  
 \*Soth, } truth, 84, 355.  
 Sothe, }  
 Sothen, boiled, sodden, 892.  
 Sothly, truly, 673, 976.  
 Sounde (in-sounde), well, unhurt, 2489.  
 Sounder, herd of wild swine, 1440.  
   A.S. *suner*. "was uutedlice nehuarne long from him † ðæm *suner* berga monigra gefoeded."  
   Lindisf. Mt. viii. 30.  
 Soundly, soundly, 1991.  
 \*Sourquydrye, pride, 311.  
 \*Sowme, number, 1321.  
 Sozt, went, departed, 685, 1438.  
 Spare-wise, moderately, temperately, 901.  
 Sparlyr, calf of the leg, 158. See Wyclif, Deuteron, xxviii., 35.  
 Sparthe, battle axe, 209.  
 Sped, hastened, went quickly, 1444.  
 Spede, profit, 918.  
 Speded, hastened, 979.  
 Spede3, prosperest, 410.  
 Spedly, expediently, 1935.  
 Spek, } spake, 1117, 1288.  
 Speken, }  
 \*Spelle, speech, narrative, 209, 1199, 2184.  
 Spelle3, talkest, 2140.  
 Spend, } fastened, 158, 587. O.N.  
 Spenet, } *spenna*.  
 Spende (speche), to talk, 410.  
 Spenne, space, interval, 1074, 2316.  
 Spenné, spinny, quickset hedge, 1709, 1896.  
 Spetos, sharp, cruel, 209.  
 Spone3, spoons, 886.  
 Spore3, spurs, 587.  
 Sprenged, sprang, 1415; dawned, 2009.  
 Sprent, leapt, 1896.  
 Sprit, started, 2316.  
 Sprong, sprang, 670.  
 \*Spured, } = spered, inquired,  
 Spuryed, } 901, 2093.  
 Spyt, injury, 1444.  
 Stabled, established, 1069.  
 Stablye, station of huntsmen, 1153.  
 \*Stad, placed, disposed, 33, 644, 2137.  
 Staf-ful, quite full, 494.  
 \*Stale, } seat, 104, 107.  
 Stalle, }  
 Stalked, approached, moved, 237.  
 \*Stalworth, strong, powerful, brave, 846, 1659.  
 Stange, pole, staff, 1614. A.S. *stenge*. S.Prov.E. *stang*.  
 Stapled, furnished with staples, 981.  
 \*Starande, glittering, 1818.  
 Start, started, moved, 431, 1716.  
 Statut, agreement, covenant, 1060.  
 Staue, staff, 2139.  
 \*Sted, } place, 439, 2213, 2323.  
 Stedde, }  
 \*Stek, stuck, 152.  
 \*Stel, stole, 1191.  
 Stel-gere, steel-gear, armour, 260.  
 \*Stemed, } stood still, stopt, 230,  
 Stemmed, } 1117.  
 \*Steuen, voice, sound, 242, 2008, 2336; conference, 1060, 2194, 2213.  
 Stif, strong, brave, 104, 107, 322.  
 Stif, courageously, 671.  
 Stifly, 287, 605.  
 Stirop, 2060.  
 Stithly, } stiffly, strongly, 431,  
 Stythly, } 575. A.S. *stith*, strong.  
 \*Stiztel, to dispose, 2137.  
 Stiztles, } sits, dwells, 104, 2213.  
 Stiztle3, }  
 Stuffed, 606.  
 \*Stoken (*p.p.* of *steke*), secured, fastened, fixed, 33, 494, 782, 2194.

- Ston-stil, 242.  
 Stonyed, confounded, astonished, 1291.  
 Stor, } strong, great, 1291, 1923,  
 Store, } A.S. *stór*, great, vast.  
 "A *store* man of strenght and of stuerne will."—(T. B. I. 538.)  
 Stori, 34.  
 Stoundez, time, 1567; bi-stoundez, at times, 1517.  
 Stowned, confounded, astonished, 242, 301.  
 Strakande, blowing, 1364, 1923. A hunting term.  
 Strayne, restrain, curb, 176.  
 Streȝt, narrow, close, tight, 152.  
 Strok, stroke, 287.  
 Stroked (beard), 334.  
 Strokes, brandishes, 416.  
 \*Strothe, rugged, wild, 1710. See note, p. 83.  
 Strye, destroy, 2194.  
 Strythe, } position of the legs  
 Stryththe, } when firmly placed, stride, 846, 2305.  
 Stubbe, stock of a tree, 2293.  
 Sturez = stirs, brandishes, 331.  
 Sturne, stout, bold, 143; used substantively, 214.  
 Sturnely, 331.  
 Sturtes, stirrups, 171.  
 Stylly, softly, 1117.  
 Styȝtel, set, dispose, 2252.  
 Suande, following, 1467.  
 Sued, followed, 501, 1705.  
 Sues, follows, 510.  
 Sumned, summoned, 1052.  
 Sum-quat, somewhat, 86.  
 Sum-quyle, } once, formerly, 625,  
 Sum-whyle, } 720.  
 Sundred, severed, disjointed, 659.  
 Sure, 588.  
 Surfet, fault, 2433.  
 Surquidre, pride, 2457.  
 Swange, loins, 138, 2034. O.Sw. *swange*.  
 Swap, exchange, 1108.  
 \*Sware, square, 138.  
 \*Sware, answer, 1108.  
 Swared, answered, 1793, 2011.  
 Swarez, answers, 1756.  
 \*Swenged, rushed, 1439.  
 Swengen, proceed, move quickly, 1615.  
 Swenges, starts, rushes, 1756.  
 Swere, swear, 403; swore, 1825.  
 \*Swete, "*in swete*" = in life, 2518. Sir F. Madden renders it *suit*.  
 Swete, *adj.* used substantively, 1108, 1222.  
 Swete = sweet, fine, good, 180. Sir F. Madden renders it *sweated*.  
 Swethled, folded, 2034. A.S. *swethel*, a swaddling-band.  
 \*Sweuenes, dreams, 1756.  
 \*Sweyed, moved, pressed, 1429.  
 \*Swez, } follows, 1562; stooped,  
 Sweȝe, } 1796.  
 Swyerez, squires, 824.  
 \*Swyngeȝ, rushes, 1562. See *Swengeȝ*.  
 \*Swyre, neck, throat, 138, 186, 957.  
 \*Swythe, quickly, 8, 815, 1424, 2259; greatly, earnestly, 1860, 1866, 1897.  
 Swythely, quickly, much, 1479.  
 Swoghe (silence), dead (silence), 243. A.S. *swigian*, to be silent, mute, astonished.  
 \*Syfleȝ, blows, whistles, 517.  
 Sykande, sighing, 1796.  
 \*Syked, sighed, 672.  
 \*Syker, sure. See *Siker*.  
 Sykyng, sighing, 753.  
 Syluener = sylueren, *adj.* used substantively, silver, plate, 124.  
 Syluer-in, silver, 886.  
 Symple, 503.  
 Syngne, sign, token, 625.  
 \*Syn, since, 19, 24, 919, 1892.  
 \*Sythe, } times, 17, 632, 761,  
 Sythes, } 1868.  
 Sytheȝ, }  
 Sythen, since, afterwards, next, 1, 6, 43, 115, 358, 1234, 1339.

Sy3, }  
 Sy3e, } saw, 83, 200, 1582.

Ta, take, 413, 2357.

Table3, corbels (?), 789.

Tachched, } attached, fixed, 219,

Tached, } 2512.

Tache3, fastens, 2176.

\*Takles, gear, 1129.

Tale, speech, discourse, 1236.

Talentyf, desirous, 350.

Talkande, talking, 108.

Talkyng, speech, 917.

Tan (*pl.*), take, 977, 1920.

Tan, taken, 490, 1210.

Tape, }  
 Tappe, } stroke, blow, 406, 2357.

Tapit, carpet, 568; table (?), 884.

Tapites, } tapestry, 77, 858.

Tapytez, }

Tars is stated by Ducange to mean *Tharsia*, a country adjoining to Cathay, but not to be confounded with Tartary. In 77, 858, it is named as the place where tapestries were manufactured, and in 571 a rich silk must be understood.

Taysed=teased (?), driven, harassed, 1169.

\*Tayt, lively, sportive, 988, and hence active, fierce, 1377. Sir F. Madden suggests *fair, plump*.

"The bustuus bukkis rakis furth on raw,

Heyrdis of hertis throw the thyk wod-schaw,

Kyddis skipband throw ronnyys efter rays,

In lyssouris and on leys; litill lammys Full *tayt* and tryg socht bletand to thar dammys."

(G. Douglas, vol. ii., p. 758.)

Tazt, }  
 Taztte, } taught, 1485, 2379.

\*Teccheles, blameless, 917.

\*Tech, disposition, quality, 2488.

Teches (*pl.* of *tech*), 2436.

\*Telde, mansion, habitation, 11, 1775.

Telded, set up, built, 795, 884.

Teldet, set up, 1648.

Teldes, habitations, 11.

Temes, stories, themes, 1541.

\*Tene, *sb.* sorrow, mischief, 22.

Tene, *adj.* tedious, perilous, difficult, 1008, 1707, 2075.

Tene, *vb.* to grieve, 2002.

Tened, grieved, 2501; molested, 1169.

Tenez, troubles, matters, 547.

Tenelyng, trouble (?), 1514.

\*Tent, *sb.* care, intent, attention, 624.

Tented, took care of, 1018.

Thar, need, 2354. A.S. *thearfan*. T. B. I. 2080.

That, used for *what*, 1406.

Tha3, though, 350, 438, 467.

\*Thede, country, land, 1499.

Theder, thither, 935.

Then, than, 24, 236, 655.

Ther, } where, 353, 428, 874.

Ther-forne, therefore, 1107.

Ther-tylle, thereto, 1110, 1369.

\*Thewes, } manners, 912, 916.

Thewez, }

Thinkkez, } seems, 1111, 1241,

Thynkkez, } 1481, 1793, 2109.

\*Tho, those, 68, 466; the, 39, 1419.

Thof, though, 624.

\*Tholed, suffered, 1859, 2419.

Thonk, thanks, 1380.

Thonke, thank, 1984.

Thonkke3, thanks, 1031.

Thore, there, 667.

Thozt, seemed, 49, 803, 819, 870.

Thrast, thrust, 1443.

\*Thrat, threatened, 1713; compelled, urged, 1980.

Thrawen, bound, twisted, 194. A.S. *thrdwan*, to wind.

\*Thrawen, brawny, 579. In G. Douglas *thrawin* has the sense of fierce, bold, strong.

Thred, 1712.

- \*Threpe, chiding, 1859, 2997.  
 Threpez, chides, reproves, and hence struggles with, 504.  
 Threted, threatened, 1725.  
 \*Thrich, push, rush, 1713.  
 \*Thro, earnest, eager, 645, 1713, 1751, 1868, 1946; quickly, 1021; bold, confident, 2300.  
 \*Throly, earnestly, 939.  
 \*Throng, thrust, crowded, 1021.  
 Throw, time, while, 1680, 2219. A.S. *thrah*.  
 Thrown = thrown = exposed, 1740. Sir F. Madden takes it to be another form of *thrawn*, plump.  
 Thrye, thrice, 763.  
 Thryes, thrice, 1936.  
 \*Thryngez, crowded, 2397.  
 \*Thrynne, three, 1868.  
 Thryuande, hearty, 1980.  
 Thryuandely, heartily, 1080, 1380.  
 \*Thryuen, well favoured, 1740.  
 \*Thryzt, threw, 1443; given, 1946.  
 Thulged = tholged = tholed, endured, 1859. A.S. *tholgian*, to endure, suffer.  
 \*Thurled = thirled, pierced, 1356.  
 Thurz, } through, above, 91, 243,  
 Thurze, } 645.  
 Thuzt, thought, 843, 848.  
 Thwarle, tight, hard, 194. *Wharl-knot* is still used in the same sense in Lancashire.  
 Thwong, thong, 194.  
 Thwonges, thongs, 579.  
 Thy, therefore (?), 2247.  
 Thyzez, thighs, 579.  
 \*Tit, } quickly, steadily, promptly,  
 Tyt, } ly, 31, 299, 1596. See  
 Tite, } *As-tyt*.  
 Tyte, }  
 Titleres, hounds, 1726.  
 To, too, 1827.  
 To = ? te, go, 1671.  
 To-fylched, seized, pulled down, 1172.  
 To-hewe, to cut in pieces, 1853.  
 \*Tole, weapon, axe, 413, 2260.  
 "Jason  
 Gryppet a grym *toole*, gyrd of his hede."  
 (T. B. I. 938.)  
 \*Tolke, man, 1775, 1811, 1966.  
 See *Tulk*.  
 To-morn, } to-morrow, 548, 756,  
 To-morne, } 1097.  
 Tone = tane, betaken, committed, 2159.  
 Toppynge, mane (?), or top, head (?), 191.  
 \*Tor, tedious, difficult, 165, 719.  
 O.N. *tor*, Skr. *du* (a prefixal element denoting difficulty, trouble, etc., as in O.E. *torfer*, etc.).  
 To-raced, run down, 1168.  
 Torche, 1119.  
 Toret = turreted, 960. T. B. I. 4956.  
 Tornayeez, turns, wheels, 1707.  
 Tortors, turtles, 612.  
 Toruayle = labour, task, 1540. O.N. *torvelldr*. O.Scotch, *torfel*, to be fatigued, to pine away.  
 To-tachched, fastened, tied, 579.  
 Totes, peeps, looks, 1476. Swed. *titta*.  
 Tournayed, 41.  
 \*Towch, request, 1301.  
 Towches, sounds, 120.  
 Towchez, covenants, 1677.  
 Town, come, drawn, 1093. A.S. *teón* (*p.p. togen, ge-togen*), to pull, draw, to go.  
 Tozt, *adj.* behaved, mannered, 1869. Northumbrian *tazt*. O.E. *tauzt*.  
 Trammes, stratagems, 3.  
 Trantes, employs artifices or tricks, 1707. See Townely Mysteries, v. *Trant*.  
 Trased, twined, 1739.  
 Trauayl, fatigue, labour, 2241.  
 Trauayled, travelled, 1093.  
 Traunt, trick, 1700. See *Trantes*.  
 Traunthe, } troth, faith, fidelity,  
 Traweth, } 403, 626, 1050,  
 Trawthe, } 1545, 1638.

- Trawe, to believe, 70, 90, 1396 ;  
*imp.* trust, 2112.
- Traylez, hunt by the track or scent,  
 1700.
- Trayst, assured, 1211.
- Trayteres = trayueres = trauerce(?),  
 1700.
- Treleted, adorned, 960.
- Tressoun, head-dress, 1739.
- Trestes, } trestles, supports of a  
 Trestez, } table, 884, 1648.
- Tricherie, treachery, 4.
- Tried, 4.
- Trifel, }  
 Trifle, } 108, 547.
- \*Trochet, a term of architecture,  
 795.
- \*Trowe, to believe, 813, 2238.
- True, *adj.* used substantively =  
 truth (?), 1210.
- Trulofez, true-love knots, 612.
- Trumpes, }  
 Trumpez, } trumpets, 116, 1016.
- \*Trussen, pack up, 1129.
- Trwe, true, 1091, 1514, 1845.
- Trwluf, }  
 Trweluf, } true-love, 1527, 1540.
- Tryed, fine, costly, good, 77, 219.
- Tryst, trust, 380.
- Tryster, } The stations allotted  
 Trysteres, } to different persons  
 in hunting, 1146, 1170, 1712.
- Trystyly, faithfully, 2348.
- Tule = tuly (?), 568.
- \*Tulk, man, knight, 3, 638, 2133.
- \*Tulkes, men, 41.
- Tuly seems to be equivalent, 858,  
 to Toulouse, 77, which place  
 seems then to have been famed  
 for its tapestries.
- Tuschez, tusks, 1563, 1579.
- Tweyne, two, twain, 962, 1339.
- Twyes, twice, 1522.
- \*Twynne, to sever, part, 2512.
- Twynne, two, 425.
- Twynnen, twined, 191.
- Tyffen, to array, put in order,  
 1129. O.N. *typova*.
- Tylle, to, 673, 1979.
- \*Tyrron, flayed, 1921.
- \*Tyt, promptly, speedily, 1596.
- Tytlelet, commencement, chief,  
 1515.
- Tyxt, text, 1515, 1541.
- \*Tyzt, fastened, tied, 568, 858.
- Tyzt, undertake or endeavour (?),  
 or seek, 2483. In T. B. L. 1358,  
*tight* = sought, went.
- \*Vch, }  
 Vche, } each, 101, 131, 628, 995.
- Vcha = Northumbrian *ilka*, each,  
 742, 997, 1262.
- Vchon, }  
 Vchone, } each one, 98, 657,  
 1113.
- \*Vgly, horrible, 441 ; horribly,  
 2079.
- \*Vmbe, around, about, 589, 1830,  
 2034.
- Vmbe-clypped, encircled, em-  
 braced, 616.
- Vmbe-foldes, encircles, falls about,  
 181.
- Vmbe-kesten, surrounded, 1434.
- Vmbe-lappez, enfolds, 628.
- Vmbe-teze, inclosed, 770 ; *teze* is  
 from the A.S. *teogan*, to draw,  
*teah*, drew.
- Vmbe-torne (= about, around (?),  
 Sir F. M.) = about-turned (?) =  
 twisted (?), 184. See note.
- Vmbe-weued, enclosed, 581.
- Vnbarred, 2070.
- Vn-bene, rugged, impassable, 710.  
 See *Bene*.
- Vnblythe, mournful, sorrowful,  
 sad, 746.
- Vncely, mischievous, 1562.
- Vncouth, strange, marvellous, 93,  
 1808.
- Vndo, to cut up game ; a hunting  
 term, 1327.
- \*Vnethe, scarcely, 134.
- \*Vnhap, misfortune, 438, 2511.
- Vnhardeled, dispersed, 1697. Fr.  
*hardelle*, troupe.

- Vnlace, to cut up, 1606.  
 Vnleute, disloyalty, 2499.  
 Vn-louked, unlocked, 1201.  
 Vn-mete, immense, 208.  
 Vn-rydely, ruggedly, 1432. O.E.  
*unryde*, sharp, rough. A.S. *ungerȝdu*, rugged; *ungerydelice*, sharply; *geryd*, smooth, even.  
 Vn-slayn, not slain, 1858.  
 Vn-slyȝe, careless.  
 Vn-soundyly, fiercely, 1438.  
 Vn-sparely, unsparingly, 979.  
 Vn-spurd, unasked, 918. See *Spured*.  
 Vn-thryuande, uncourteous, 1499.  
 Vn-trawthe, unfaithfulness, 2383, 2509.  
 Vn-tyȝtel, if not an error for *untyl nyȝte*, may mean *unrestrainedly* (from *tyȝt*, to fasten). Sir F. Madden renders it merrily. See *Tyȝt*.  
 Vp-brayde, drawn up, 781.  
 Vpon, at, 9, 301, 1934.  
 Vrysoun, the same as the *cointesse* or "kerchef of plesaunce," 608. Fr. *hourson*.  
 Vtter, out, outward, 1565.  
 Vayles, veils, 958.  
 Vayres, purity, 1015. Left unexplained by Sir F. Madden.  
 Ver, man, knight, 866. O.N. *ver*.  
 Verayly, 866.  
 Verdure, green, 161.  
 Vertuus=vertuous, precious, 2027.  
 Vewters, men who tracked deer by the *fewte* or odour, 1146.  
 Visage, 866.  
 Voyde, to quit, 346.  
 Voyded, got rid of, 1518; void, free, 634.  
 Voydeȝ, casts, 1342.  
 Vyage, expedition, journey, 535.  
 Vylany, { fault, 345, 634.  
 Vylanye, }  
 Wage, surety (?), 533.  
 Wages, 396.  
 Waked, kept awake, sat up at night, 1094.  
 \*Wakkest, weakest, 354.  
 \*Wakned, awakened, 119; shone, 1650.  
 \*Wale, to seek, 398; choose or possess, 1238.  
 \*Wale, lovely, worthy, 1010; choice, good, 1712, 1759.  
 Waled, chosen, 1276.  
 Walkeȝ, spreads, 1521.  
 Walle= wale, excellent, 1403.  
 \*Wallande, boiling, ferment, 1762.  
 \*Walt, threw, cast, 1336. O.N. *vellta*.  
 \*Walt, exercised, possessed, 231; enjoyed, 485.  
 \*Waltered, poured, was shed, 684.  
 \*Wan, came, 2231.  
 Wande, bough, branch, 1161.  
 \*Wane, wanting, deficient, 493.  
 \*Wap, blow, 2249.  
 \*Wapped, flew with violence, as an arrow; rushed as the wind, 2004. O.N. *vappa*.  
 War! exclamation of the hunters, 1158.  
 "In the *Maister of the Game*, in the instructions for hunting the hare, the horsemen are directed 'for to kepe that none hownde folowe to sheepe, ne to other beestis, and if thei do, to ascrie hem sore, and bilaishe hem wel, saying lowde, *Ware! Ware! ha, ha! Ware!*'"—MS. Cott., Vesp. B. xii., fol. 97b.  
 War, aware, 764, 1586.  
 Ware, to use, employ, 402, 1235.  
 Waret, acted, dealt, 2344.  
 Warly, warily, 1186, 1900.  
 Warloker, more warily, 677.  
 \*Warp, cast, 2253; cast, uttered, 224, 1423, 2025.  
 \*Warthe, water-ford, 715.  
 Waryst, protected, 1094.  
 Wast, waist, 144.  
 Waste, wilderness, 2098.  
 \*Wathe=wothe, injury, danger, 2355.

- Wat3, *was, passim.* had, 1413.  
 \*Wayke, *weak*, 282.  
 \*Wayned, brought, 264, 984, 1032, 2456; sent, 2459.  
 \*Waynez, gets up to, opens, 1743.  
 \*Wayte, to see, 306.  
 Wayted, looked, 2163.  
 Waytez, watches, looks, 1186, 2289.  
 Wayth, game, venison, 1381.  
 Wayued, stroked, moved, 306.  
 We! ah! 2185.  
 \*Wede, armour, clothing, part of the dress, 831, 1310, 2358.  
 Wedes, } armour, garments, 151,  
 Wedez, } 271, 861; foliage of the groves, 508.  
 Wela-wylle, exceeding lonesome, desert, 2084. Cf. O.E. *wil-some*, lonely, desert; *wyl*, astray, forlorn.  
 \*Wela-wynne, very joyous, 518.  
 Wolde, possess, enjoy, 835, 837, 1064.  
 Weldez, possesses, 1528, 1542, 2454.  
 We-loo, alas! 2208.  
 \*Wele, wealth, riches, 7, 60, 1270, 1394; joy, 485, 1371, 1767, 2490; good fortune, 997, 2134.  
 Welkyn, sky, air, 525, 1696.  
 Welnez, } almost, 7, 867.  
 Welneze, }  
 \*Wend, } to go, 559, 1028, 1053;  
 Wonde, } went, 90, 1161; gone, 1712.  
 Wende, thought, 669.  
 Wondez, turns, 2152.  
 \*Wene, ween, think, 270, 1226.  
 Wener, fairer, 945. O.N. *ven*. O.Dan. *ven*, beautiful.  
 Wenged, avenged, 1518.  
 Went = wond = thought, 1711.  
 Weppen, weapon, 384.  
 Werbelande, warbling, whistling, 2004.  
 Werbles, notes, 119.  
 Were, wore, 1928.  
 Were, war, 271; hostility, 1628.  
 \*Were, to defend, ward off, 2015, 2041.  
 Werned, refused, denied, 1494.  
 Wernes, denies, 1824.  
 Wernynge, refusal, denial, 2253.  
 Werre, war, 16.  
 Werrez, make war, 720.  
 Wesaund, wind-pipe, 1336.  
 Wesche, washed, 887.  
 Weterly, savagely, fiercely, 1706.  
 Weue, to give, 1975.  
 Weued, gave, 2359.  
 Wex, waxed, 319.  
 \*Wejed, carried, 1403.  
 Wharred, made a whirring noise, 2203.  
 What, how! lo! 1163, 2203.  
 What-so, whatsoever, 382, 1550.  
 Wheder-warde, whitherward, 1053.  
 Whene, queen, 74, 2492.  
 Whethen, whence, 871.  
 Whether, either of two, 203.  
 Whyrlande, rushing, 2222.  
 Whyssynes, cushions, 877.  
 Wich, what, 918.  
 Wit, } know, learn, 131, 255,  
 Wyt, } 1508.  
 Wit, with, 113.  
 With, } by, 664, 1153, 1229,  
 Wyth, } 2416.  
 \*Wizt, *adj.* great, strong, 1762; *sb.* strong, fierce (one), 1440.  
 \*Wlonk, fair, beautiful, 515, 581, 1977, 1988, 2432.  
 Wlonkest, fairest, 2025.  
 Wod, went, 787.  
 \*Wode, mad with anger, 2289.  
 Wod-craftez, skill in the arts of the chase, 1605.  
 Wodwos, wild men, monsters, 721. A.S. *wudu-wasan*, wood satyrs, robbers.  
 Woke (*pret.* of *wake*), watched, sat up at night, 1025.  
 Wolod = wolde = would, 1508.  
 Woldez, desirest, 2127; wouldst, 2128.  
 Wombe, belly, 144.

- Won, } power or will, or rather  
 Wone, } possession, 1238; riches,  
 wealth, 1269. S.Sax. *wunnen*.  
 \*Won, } dwelling, mansion, cham-  
 Wone, } ber, 257, 736, 906, 2490.  
 \*Won, } to dwell, 257, 814.  
 Wone, }  
 Wonde, dwelt. See *Woned*.  
 \*Wonde, to avoid, shrink back,  
 563.  
 Wonde, delay, 488.  
 Wonder, marvel (?), 16. Does it not  
 rather signify sorrow? S.Sax.  
*wundre*, hurt, mischief.  
 Wonder, wondrous, 2200.  
 Wonderly, wondrously, 787, 1025.  
 Wone, riches, wealth, 1269.  
 \*Woned, dwelt, 50, 701, 721.  
 \*Wone3, dwellings, mansions, 685,  
 1051, 1386, 2400.  
 \*Wone3, dwells, 399, 2098.  
 \*Wonnen, conducted, brought,  
 831; arrived, come, 461, 1365;  
 brought, 2091.  
 Wont = woned = dwelt, abode,  
 17. Sir F. Madden renders it  
 use, custom.  
 Wont, lack, want, 131.  
 Wont, fail, 987.  
 Wont3, fails, 1062.  
 Wonyd, dwelt, 2114.  
 Wonyes, dwells. See *Wone3*.  
 Worde, fame, reputation, 1521.  
 Worlde, Nature, 530.  
 \*Worme3, dragons, serpents, 720.  
 \*Worre, worse, 1588, 1591.  
 Wort, herb, 528.  
 \*Worth, to be, happen, 238, 1202,  
 1214, 1302; *subj.* be, 2127,  
 2374.  
 Worthed, was, became, 485; would  
 be, 2096; become, 678.  
 Worth3, is, becomes, will or shall  
 be, 2035, 1106, 1387.  
 Worthe, worthy, 559.  
 Worthilych, worthy, honourable,  
 343.  
 Worthy, worthily, 1477.
- Worthy, *sb.* 1276, 1508.  
 Worthyly, honourably, properly,  
 72, 144.  
 \*Wot, know, 24.  
 \*Woth, harm, mischief, injury,  
 222, 488, 1576.  
 Wounden, wound, bound, 215.  
 Wowche-saf, vouchsafe, 1391.  
 \*Wowes, walls, 1180.  
 Woxes = waxes, grows, 518.  
 \*Wo3e, wrong, harm, 1550.  
 \*Wo3e, wall, 858.  
 Wo3es, walls, 1650.  
 \*Wrake, destruction, mischief, 16.  
 Wrast, loud, stern, 1423.  
 Wrast, advantage (?), 1663. A.S.  
*wraest*, good.  
 Wrast, disposed, 1482.  
 Wrastele3 = wrestle3, wrestles, 525.  
 Wrathed, troubled, annoyed, 726.  
 Wrathed, entangled, ensnared,  
 2420.  
 Wre3ande, reviling, 1706. A.S.  
*wr3egan*, to accuse, to drive.  
 \*Wro, obscure corner, 2222.  
 Wroth, } violent, sharp, boister-  
 Wrothe, } ous, 70, 319, 525,  
 1706.  
 Wroth (*pret.* of *writhe*), moved,  
 round, 1200.  
 Wrothely, angrily, 2289.  
 Wrotheloker, more angrily, 2344.  
 Wro3t, } occasioned, 3, 32.  
 Wro3ten, }  
 Wruzled, clad, folded, 2191.  
 \*Wyghe, } man, knight, 131, 249,  
 Wy3, } 384, 581, 1487; ap-  
 Wy3e, } plied to God, 244.  
 Wykis, corners of the mouth, 1572.  
 Wylde, used substantively for  
 beasts of the chase in general,  
 1150, 2003; and in the singular  
 number, 1167, 1586, 1900, the  
 words deer, boar, fox, being re-  
 spectively understood.  
 Wyldrenesse, 701.  
 Wyle, } wily, 1728; used sub-  
 Wylly, } stantively, 1905.



- \*Wylsum, wild, desert, and hence unpleasant, 689. O.E. *wyl*, forlorn.  
 \*Wylt=willed, wandered, escaped, 1711.  
 Wylyde, wild, amorous, 2367.  
 Wylnyng, will, 1546.  
 Wynde3, returns, 530.  
 \*Wynne, joy, bliss, 15, 1765, 2420.  
 \*Wynne, goodly, 1032, 2430, 2456.  
 \*Wynne, to come, arrive at, 402, 1537, 2215. T. B. I. 953.  
 Wynne-lych, cheerful, 980.  
 Wynne3, proceeds, goes, 1569, 2044.  
 Wynt-hole, wind-hole, 1336.  
 Wypped, wiped, 2022.  
 Wypped, struck, 2249.  
 \*Wyrde, fate, 1752, 2134, 2418.  
 Wyrdes, destinies, 1968.  
 \*Wysee, teach, direct, 549, 739.  
 \*Wyste, } knew, 461, 1087, 1435.  
 Wysten, }  
 Wysty, desert, waste (?), 2189.  
 Wyt. See *Wit*.  
 Wyte3, looks on, 2050.  
 Wy3. See *Wyghe*.  
 Wy3es, } men, 1403, 1167.  
 Wy3e3, }  
 Wy3t, person, wight, 1792.  
 \*Wy3t, loud, 119.  
 Wy3test, bravest, 261.  
 Wy3test, strongest, most rapid, 1591.  
 Wy3tly, quickly, 688.  
 Yrne, iron, 2267.  
 Yrnes, harness, armour, 729.  
 Ysse-ikkles, icicles, 732.  
 \*Y3e, eye, 198.  
 Y3e-lydde3, eye-lids, 446.  
 Y3en, eyes, 82 304, 684.  
 3arande, } loud, snarling, 1595,  
 3arande, } 1724. S.Sax. 3uren,  
 to chatter.  
 \*3are=yare, quickly, soon, 2410.  
 \*3arked, made ready, 820.  
 \*3arkke3, makes ready, disposes, 2410.  
 3aule, howl, 1453.  
 3ayned, halloood, 1724. S.Sax.  
 3eien, to cry. O.N. *geya*, to bark.  
 3e, yea, 813, 1091, 1497; still, ever, 1729.  
 3ede, } went, 817, 1122, 1400,  
 3eden, } 1684.  
 \*3ederly, promptly, soon, 453, 1215, 1485, 2325.  
 \*3elde, requite, 1038, 1263; yield, 1215.  
 \*3elde, } yielded, gave, 67, 1595,  
 3elden, } 1981.  
 3elde3, returns, 498.  
 3elle, yell, 1453.  
 3elpyng, pomp, ostentation, 492.  
 \*3ep, } active, alert, 60, 105, 284,  
 3epe, } 1510; fair, 951.  
 3epl, promptly, 1981, 2244.  
 3er, year, 60, *et alib*.  
 \*3ern, } quickly, 498; earnestly,  
 3erne, } eagerly, 1478, 1526.  
 \*3ernes, } runs, passes away  
 3irne3, } quickly, 498, 529.  
 A.S. *ge-urnen*.  
 3et, yet, 1122.  
 \*3ette, grant, 776.  
 \*3e3e, ask, 1215.  
 3e3ed, asked, 67.  
 3if, if, 1494, 1496.  
 3irne3. See *3ernes*.  
 3od, went, 1146.  
 3ol, Christmas, 284, 500.  
 3olden, yielded, 453, 820. See *3elda*.  
 3ol3e, yellow, tawny, 951.  
 \*3omerly, lamentably, piteously, 1453.  
 3onge, younger one, 951.  
 3onge-3er, youth, 492.  
 3onke = 3onge, young person, 1526.  
 \*3ore, yore, long time, 2114.



The publications of *The Early English Text Society* are divided into Four Classes. I. Arthur and other Romances. II. Works illustrating our Dialects and the History of our Language, including a Series of re-editions of our early Dictionaries. III. Biblical Translations and Religious Treatises. IV. Miscellaneous. The following are some of the works which in future years will be published in each of the Classes. (The *Extra Series*, which commenced in 1867, is intended for re-editions.)

## I.

Syr Thomas Maleor's Mort d'Arthur. To be edited from Caxton's edition (1485 A.D.), with a new Preface, Notes, and a Glossary. (*In the Extra Series.*)

The Romance of Arthour and Merlin. From the Auchinleck MS. (ab. 1320-30 A.D.), and the Lincoln's Inn and Douce MSS. (*In the Extra Series.*)

The History of the Saint Graal or Sank Ryall. By Henry Lonelich, Skynner (ab. 1440 A.D.). To be re-edited from the unique MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi Coll., Cambridge, by F. J. Furnivall, Esq., M.A. (*In the Extra Series.*)

The Arthur Ballads.

The Romance of Sir Tristrem. To be edited from the Auchinleck MS.

The English Charlemagne Romances. From the Auchinleck and other MSS.

The Romance of Sir Generides. From the MS. in Trin. Coll., Cambridge.

The Romance or Legend of Sir Ypotis. From the Vernon MS.

## II.

Cursor Mundi, or Cursur o Worlde, in the Northern Dialect. To be edited from the MSS. in the British Museum and Trinity College, Cambridge, by R. Morris, Esq. [*Copied.*]

Hampole's Version of, and Commentary on, the Psalms. To be edited from a Northern MS. by R. Morris, Esq. [*Copied.*]

Hampole's other English Works in the Northern dialect.

The Gospel of Nicodemus in the Northumbrian dialect. To be edited for the first time from Harl. MS. 4196, &c., Cotton-Galba, E ix., by R. Morris, Esq.

Lives of Saints, in the Southern dialect. To be edited from the Harleian MS. 2277 (ab. 1305 A.D.), by R. Morris, Esq.

Barbour's Lives of Saints, in the Northern Dialect. From the Cambridge University MS. Abecedarium Anglico-latinum, pro Tyrunculis, Richardo Hulceto exscriptore. Londini, 1552.

A little Dictionary for Children (W. de Worde), or a shorte Dictionarie for yonge beginners (ed. Evans, 1566), by J. Withals. (The earliest edition, to be collated with the succeeding editions.)

An Alvearie or Quadruple Dictionarie in Englishe, Latin, Greeke, and French, by John Baret. (The edition of 1580 collated with that of 1573.)

A collection of Early English Treatises on Grammar. To be edited chiefly from MSS. for the first time by Henry B. Wheatley, Esq. [*Copied.*]

## III.

The Old and New Testament in Verse. To be edited from the Vernon MS. by R. Morris, Esq. [*Copied.*]

The History of Adam and Eve. To be edited from the Vernon MS., Harl. MS. 1704, &c., by S. Wayland Kershaw, Esq., M.A. [*Copied.*]

The Stories of Susanna and the Elders, Lazarus, &c. To be edited from the Vernon MS., by J. W. Hales, Esq., M.A. [*Copied.*]

Medytacions of the Soper of our Lorde Ihesu, &c., perhaps by Robert of Brunne. To be edited from the Harl. MS. 1701 (ab. 1360 A.D.), &c., by F. J. Furnivall, Esq., M.A.

Lydgate's Life of St Edmund. From the presentation MS. to Henry VI., Harl. 2278.

## IV.

The Third Version of Piers Plowman. To be edited from the MSS., with a volume of Notes and Glossary, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A., in 1871 & 1872. [*Copied.*]

Lydgate's Works.

The Venery de Twety and The Master of the Game. To be edited from the MSS. by Alfred Sadler, Esq.

An Early English Verse Translation of Boccaccio's *De Claris Mulieribus*. To be edited by W. M. Rossetti, Esq., and Mr E. Brock.

# Early English Text Society.

The Subscription is £1 1s. a year [and £1 1s. (Large Paper, £2 2s.) additional for the EXTRA SERIES], due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Union Bank of London, 14, Argyll Place, Regent Street, W., or by post-office order (made payable at the Chief Office, London) to the Hon. Secretary, HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq., 53, Berners Street, London, W.

*The Publications for 1869 will be:—*

33. MERLIN, Part III. Edited by H. B. WHEATLEY, Esq.; with an Essay on Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie, Esq. 8s.
  37. SIR DAVID LYNDESAY'S WORKS, Part IV., containing *Ans Satyre of the Thrie Estates*. Edited by F. Hall, Esq. 4s.
  38. WILLIAM'S VISION OF PIERS PLOWMAN. Part II. Text B. Edited from the MSS. by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. 10s. 6d.
  39. THE ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE OF THE DESTRUCTION OF TROY, translated from GUIDO DE COLONNA. Edited from the unique MS. in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, by D. DONALDSON, Esq., and the Rev. G. A. PANTON. Part I. 10s. 6d.
- And as many of the following as the funds will allow.*
- LAUDER'S MINOR POEMS. Edited by F. HALL, Esq.
- THE FINDING OF THE CROSS, in Anglo-Saxon; with two Early English Poems on the Cross. Edited from MSS. by RICHARD MORRIS, Esq. *[In the Press]*
- ENGLISH GILDS, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D., ed. by the late Toulmin Smith, Esq., and his daughter Miss Lucy Toulmin Smith. *[In the Press]*
- MERLIN, Part IV., containing Preface, Index, and Glossary. Edited by H. B. WHEATLEY, Esq.
- PALLADIUS ON HUSBONDRIE; the earliest English Poem on Husbandry. To be edited from the unique MS. in Colchester Castle (ab. 1225 A.D.) by the Rev. BARTON LODGE, M.A. *[In the Press]*
- EARLY SCOTTISH VERSE, MORAL AND HISTORICAL, from a MS. in the Cambridge University Library. To be edited by the Rev. J. R. LUMBY, M.A. *[In the Press]*
- CATHOLICON ANGLICUM. An English-Latin Dictionary (A.D. 1480). To be edited from LORD MONSON'S MS. by H. B. WHEATLEY, Esq. *[Copied]*
- VARIOUS POEMS RELATING TO SIR GAWAINE. To be edited from the MSS. by R. MORRIS, Esq. *[Ready for Press]*
- RATIS RAVING, &c., a Collection of Scottish Prose and Verse on Moral and Religious Subjects. To be edited from a MS. in Camb. Univ. Libr. by the Rev. J. R. LUMBY, M.A. *[In the Press]*
- THE RULE OF ST BENET. Five Texts: Anglo-Saxon and Semi-Saxon prose; Northern verse and Midland prose of the 15th century; and an early printed version. Edited by RICHARD MORRIS, Esq. *[In the Press]*
- THE LAY FOLK'S MASS-BOOK, and other Poems. Edited from the MSS. by the Rev. F. SIMMONS. *[In the Press]*
- THE LIFE OF ST JULIANA. Edited by the Rev. T. O. COCKAYNE, M.A. *[In the Press]*

## EXTRA SERIES.

*The Publications for 1867 (8vo., 1 guinea a year; Large Paper, 2 guineas) are:—*

- I. WILLIAM OF PALERNE; or, WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF. Re-edited from the unique MS. in King's Coll., Cambridge, by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. 13s.
- II. EARLY ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. ELLIS, F.R.S. Part I. 10s.

*The Publications for 1868 (8vo., 1 guinea a year; Large Paper, 2 guineas) are:—*

- III. CAXTON'S BOOK OF CURTESYE, in Three Versions: 1. from the unique printed copy in the Cambridge University Library; 2. from the Oriel MS. 79; 3. from the Balliol MS. 354. Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A. 6s.
- IV. HAVELOK THE DANE. Re-edited from the unique MS. by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A., with the sanction and aid of the original editor, Sir FREDERIC MADDEN. 10s.
- V. CHAUCER'S BOETHIUS. Edited from the two best MSS. by R. MORRIS, Esq. 15s.
- VI. CHEVELERE ASSIGNE. Re-edited from the unique MS. by H. H. GUNNS, Esq. 2s.

*The Publications for 1869 will be:—*

- VII. EARLY ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION, with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. ELLIS, F.R.S. Part II. 10s.
- VIII. QUEENE ELIZABETHES ACADEMY, A BOOK OF PRECEDENCE, &c. Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., with Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti, Esq., and E. Oswald, Esq. 10s.
- IX. AWDELBY'S FRATERNITY OF VACABONDES, HARMAN'S CAVEAT, &c. Edited by E. VILES, Esq., and F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq. 7s. 6d.
- X. BARBOUR'S BRUCE, Part I. Edited from the MSS. by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT. *[At Press]*

## Reprinting Fund.

Additional Subscribers' names are wanted for the Texts of 1865 and 1866.

LONDON: N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

DUBLIN: WILLIAM MCGEE, 18, NASSAU STREET.

EDINBURGH: T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.

GLASGOW: OGLE & CO., 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 20.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

BOSTON, U.S.: DUTTON & CO.



—













